



# INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN

FEZILE DABI DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

2014-2015

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Foreword: Executive Mayor.....	3
Foreword; Municipal Manager.....	5
Vision & Mission.....	7
Demographic Profile.....	9
Chapter 1: IDP Framework & Process Plan.....	24
Chapter 2: Situational Analysis.....	58
Chapter 3: Strategies & Objectives.....	75
Chapter 4: Projects.....	146
Chapter 5: Turn Around strategy.....	164
Chapter 6: Sector Departments Projects & Programmes.....	185
Chapter 7 Financial Plan.....	207
Chapter 8: Spatial Development Framework.....	230

## FOREWORD: EXECUTIVE MAYOR

South Africa celebrates twenty years of democracy this year, in 1994; the people of South Africa gave a resounding mandate to the African National Congress government to eradicate poverty, inequality and separate development, giving birth to a new nation.

A nation whose identity and destiny shifted from been defined by colour, race, gender or social class. As we present this IDP in the twenty years of our democracy, our people have a reason to celebrate, and embrace all the changes that are possible today because of this government.

On December 5, 2014, South Africa will celebrate fourteen years of a non-racial developmental local government system. This will mark an important milestone to us as African National Congress Municipalities to assess our performance of the past fourteen years. Most importantly, it will give us an opportunity to reflect on whether we have achieved all those goals that we set ourselves as Municipalities.

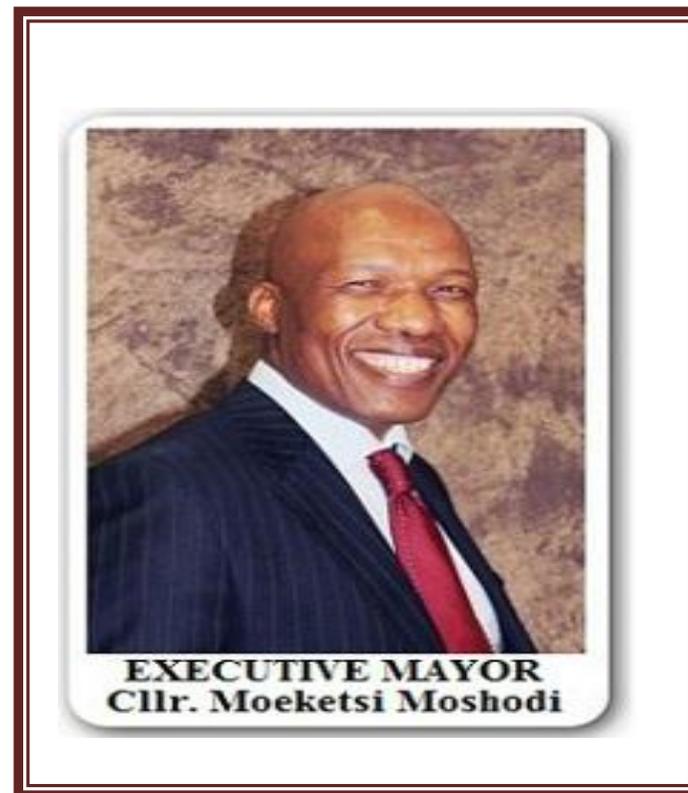
We are very proud that as Municipalities in Fezile Dabi, through our well researched IDP's and collaborations with our community we have seen major successes in our district in as far as service delivery is concern. There are many recorded achievements but these are just few that I can pen down.

Access to electricity as source of energy in our district has increased by **90.8%** compared to **80.4% in 2001**. Access to piped water has increased to **91.5% in 2011** compared to **84% in 2001**.

Refuse removal by municipalities has increased by **83% in 2011** compared to **70.6% in 2001**. Access to toilet facilities has increased to **80.3% in 2011** compared to **62, 7% in 2001**.

The number of people who have no access to toilets facilities has decreased to **1.7% in 2011** from **6.4 % in 1996**. These achievements are a true reflection of our commitment as Municipalities in this district of making sure that the quality of the lives of our people is improved. In making sure that we are achieving our developmental mandate, we continue to be guided by the 5 year Local Government Agenda as outlined in the reviewed Local Government Strategic Agenda.

Our obligation is to ensure efficient and sustainable service delivery to all the communities within the district, both rural and urban.



This consequently requires that the council excise its oversight role in a manner that promotes accountability on the administrative wing of our institution. Our focus remains that of ensuring co-ordinated forward planning through the District Coordinating Forum as an intergovernmental structure, formulate policies, systems and mechanism necessary to respond to the challenges that lies ahead.

This IDP therefore articulates our short-term, medium, and long-term approach in discharging our responsibility to accelerate service delivery. It serves as our strategic blue print that explains projects and strategies that we are going to implement in the new financial year.

The scarce resources at our disposal will be budgeted and allocated in line with projects and programs as reflected in our IDP.

The National Development Plan clearly outlines the vision of our country and steps to be taken in order to arrive at vision 2030. Our strategy on infrastructure investment is informed by this vision.

The National Development plan states that in 2030, the economy should be close to full employment. And most importantly equip our people with the skills they need; ensure that ownership of production is less concentrated and more diverse (where black people and women own a significant share of productive assets); and be able to grow rapidly, providing the resources to pay for investment in human and physical capital.

According to the National Development Plan to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality, the economy must become more inclusive and grow faster.

As you engage with this document, you will see that as Fezile Dabi District Municipality we are going to invest in infrastructure development targeting our four local municipalities. Aiming to accelerate service delivery and create job opportunities for many in our community. The NDP recommends that in reviewing South Africa's infrastructure plans, amongst others the upgrading of informal settlements must be prioritized.

Our Local Development Strategies are clearly defined in this IDP, and they are in line with the proposals of our NDP that of equipping our people with necessary skills. We are going to intensify and improve our efforts in SMME development by ensuring that they are trained and assisted with necessary tools to flourish.

As a Municipality, our performance must be evaluated based on our execution of programs and projects that are contained in this document. It therefore gives me a great pleasure to present the 2014/15 financial year Fezile Dabi Integrated Development Plan.

## FOREWORD BY THE MUNICIPAL MANAGER

Fezile Dabi District Municipality prides itself for being one of the Municipalities in the country that are service delivery driven. Our efforts and resources are always directed at assisting our local Municipalities in accelerating service delivery in the district.

Development in the local government sphere is very much dependent on an implementable, well-researched and reputable Integrated Development Plan; hence as the Municipality, we do our best when it comes to consulting our communities to make their inputs in building a realizable and reputable IDP.

Our Integrated development Plan serves as a key strategic planning document that guides our Municipality when it comes to key strategic planning and determination of priority areas, and it assists us when it comes to channeling our resources to critical areas of needs.

Most importantly, it is a document that is informed by our communities and stakeholders. Through our Public Participation program, more than two hundred community members and stakeholders were consulted in the four local municipalities of our district.

Our IDP is aligned to the five key priorities of government that includes:

1. Improving education
2. Improving healthcare
3. Creating decent work
4. Fighting crime and corruption
5. Rural development and land reform.

Fezile Dabi District Municipality has a developmental function, and a decisive role to play in creating a stable environment to allow good governance and uplift the underprivileged communities, by ensuring that proper economic, social and infrastructural services are provided for their benefit.



We are as the District mandated to offer the following services,

- Administration and planning.
- Corporate support services.
- Project Management and Public works.
- Social development and tourism.
- Disaster management and health.
- Finance.
- Project support.
- Development facilitation, and
- Governance

The 2014/15 Fezile Dabi Integrated Development plan therefore speaks to the following very critical elements of the development of local government in our district.

Investment spending in South Africa fell from an average of almost 30 percent of gross domestic product (GDP) in the early 1980s to about 16 percent by the early 2000s. Similarly, public infrastructure spending is at low levels by historical standards. In effect, South Africa has missed a generation of capital investment in roads, rail, ports, electricity, water sanitation, public transport and housing. To grow faster and in a more inclusive manner, the country needs a higher level of capital spending in general and public investment in particular. Gross fixed capital formation needs to reach about 30 percent of GDP by 2030 to see a sustained impact on growth and household services.

Public sector investment in economic infrastructure crowds in private investment. Private investment is a function of current and projected growth and profitability. Importantly, it is also a function of mutual trust and confidence in economic policies. In recent years, the public sector has favoured consumption over investment. The government's 2011 Medium Term Budget Policy Statement acknowledges this and announces a shift in the composition of expenditure towards investment, which is absolutely necessary.

The commission's recommendations on economic infrastructure cover the financing, planning and maintenance of infrastructure.

Who pays for infrastructure? Investment in some types of infrastructure has broad social and economic benefits. But playing catch-up means that charges have to increase steeply in the short to medium term to make services financially viable. The fact that one new power station (producing 4 800 MW of electricity) costs about twice the entire depreciated capital stock of existing power stations (producing 40 000 MW) illustrates the challenge. Moreover, high levels of joblessness and inequality make some of these services unaffordable for most of the population, unless they are subsidized.

**SECTION A**

**VISION & MISSION**

DRAFT

# VISION

IMPROVING THE LIVES OF CITIZENS AND PROGRESSIVELY MEETING THEIR BASIC, SOCIAL AND ECONOMICAL NEEDS, THEREBY RESTORING COMMUNITY CONFIDENCE AND TRUST IN GOVERNMENT.

# MISSION

*'FDDM WILL STRIVE TO BE A MORE RESPONSIVE AND ACCOUNTABLE MUNICIPALITY TOWARDS SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT'*

**SECTION B**

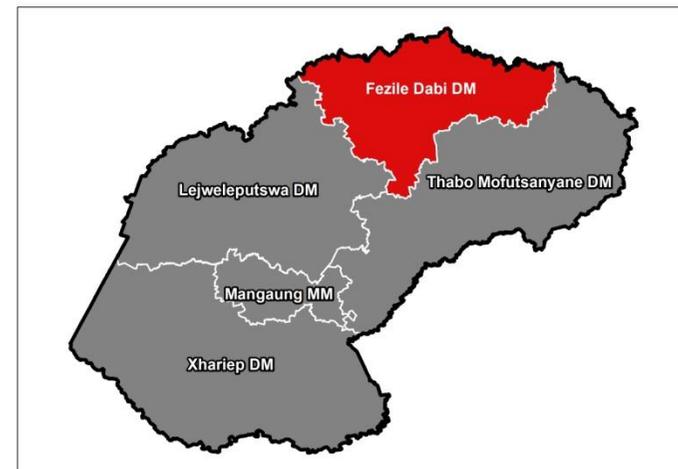
**DEMOGRAPHIC PROFILE**

## DEMOGRAPHIC PROFILE

Fezile Dabi District Municipality, formerly known as the *Northern Free State District Municipality* was established on 6<sup>th</sup> of December 2001 as a result of Section 21 of the Local Government Municipal Demarcation Act 1998 whereby all areas of the former Local Government bodies were re-demarcated and new municipal entities established. The name was officially changed to Fezile Dabi District Municipality on the 3<sup>rd</sup> of May 2005.

Fezile Dabi consists of 4 Local Municipalities:

1. Moqhaka
2. Metsimaholo
3. Ngwathe
4. Mafube



The District forms the northern part of the Free State Province and borders Thabo Mofutsanyane, Lejweleputswa and shares provincial borders with 3 of the Provinces: Gauteng, Mpumalanga and North West. The Vaal River and the Vaal Dam form the northern boundary of Fezile Dabi District Municipality and also serve as the boundary between Free State and Gauteng. Although Fezile Dabi contains 17% of the Free State is the second smallest District Municipality in the Free State covering 16.4% of the provincial area.

### Characteristics

The area is characterized by the following:

- A total area of approximately 20,668 square kilometers (15.92% of the Free State)
- A total population of approximately 488 036 people (17% of the Free State)
- A total number of households of about 142,933 (17.35% of the Free State)
- An average household size of 3.59 people (average of 3,55 for the Free State)
- A total of 38 settlements comprising 4 farming settlements, 15 formal urban towns, 17 former urban townships and 2 urban informal settlements.
-

- The 13 major towns within the district are: Deneysville, Edenville, Frankfort, Heilbron, Koppies, Kroonstad, Oranjeville, Parys, Sasolburg, Tweeling, Viljoenskroon, Villiers and Vredefort and majority of the people speak Sesotho.

## LAND USE PROFILE

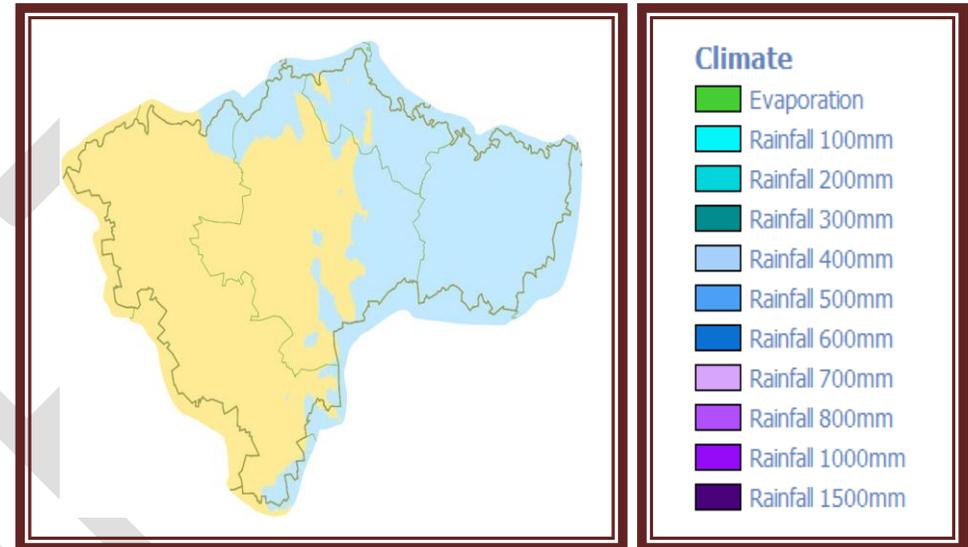
The area has a rainfall of 350mm to 500mm and evaporation of 1600mm to 2100mm per annum.

The grazing capacity ranges from 5 to 15 large stock units (LSU) per hectare. Game farming is on the increase as it is well integrated with the growing tourism in the area.

During summer this area, which produces a high share of the country's maize, bursts into an array of sunflowers, fields of mealies and wheat, interspersed with the vivid pinks of cosmos that transforms the countryside into a tapestry of gold.

The Northern Free State region or Fezile Dabi District is characterized firstly by its strategic agricultural contribution to the Free State's share of being labeled as the bread basket of South Africa. The district's contribution comes mainly in grain like maize, wheat, sorghum, sunflower, etc., and stock farming including cattle, sheep, game, etc. Today these commodities also have a spin-off in the form of a variety of agro-processing industries in the region.

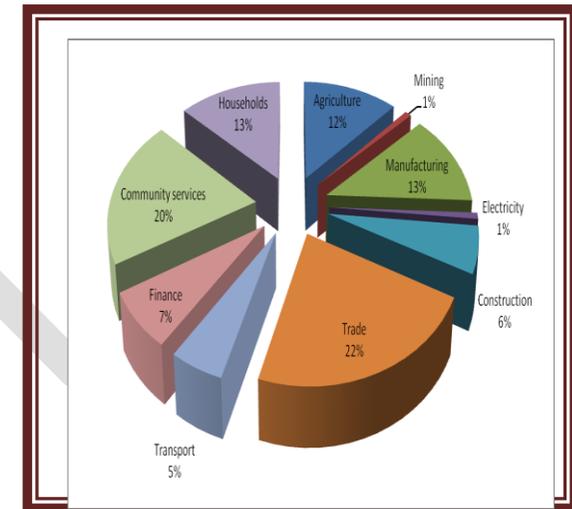
In the 19th century the area, comprising more or less the present Heilbron, Frankfort, Petrus Steyn, Lindley and Reitz was known as the Riemland, named after the countless game herds which roamed the fertile velds - today the scene of prosperous stock farming is extended and includes cattle, sheep, etc.



## ECONOMIC PROFILE

Metsimaholo is the only local municipality in which the private sector dominates the economy. The main economic contribution is from the manufacturing sector, dominated by Sasol. Moqhaka has the second highest GDP contribution in the district; the community service sector is the main contributor, as it is also in Ngwathe and Mafube.

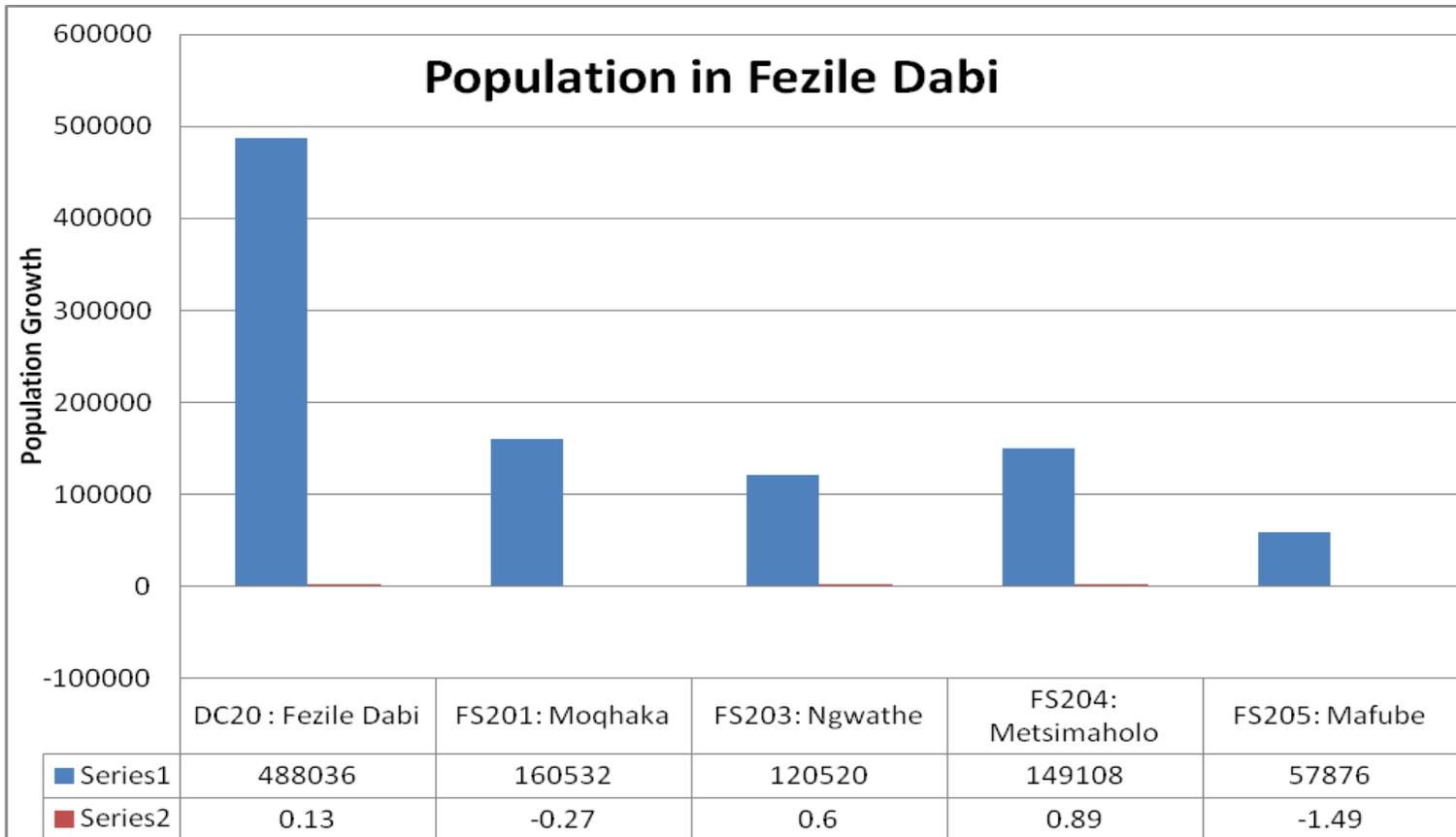
Apart from the high-tech industrialized Sasolburg area in the north, the remainder of the area has a strong agricultural base. Cattle and sheep farming provide opportunities for the processing of meat, wool and dairy products. Maize, sunflower seed, sorghum and wheat are cultivated. Extensive areas have rich underground coal deposits. Large quantities are mined in the Sasolburg district by means of conventional and strip mining methods. Sasolburg, known as the chemical hub of South Africa, has a range of industries related to the oil-from-coal process, including the Chem City project. The rare clay, Bentonite, is mined in the vicinity of Koppies. The re-exploitation of the Lacemyn diamond mine in the vicinity of Kroonstad is currently taking place and gold is mined at the Vaal Reefs Mine, part of the Witwatersrand gold reef, in the Viljoenskroon area. Heilbron has a strong industrial character. The national headquarters of several industries are situated here. Industrial development in Frankfort is agriculture-related and the largest butter production facility in the southern hemisphere is established here (SALGA, 2013).



## **DEMOGRAPHIC ANALYSIS**

Fezile Dabi District Municipality's (DC20) population makes up 488 036 in the district. The majority of the population in the district is situated in Moqhaka Local Municipality (FS201), which accounts for 32,89% of the population of the district. It is followed by Metsimaholo Local Municipality (FS204), which accounts for 30,55% of the district, then followed by Ngwathe Local Municipality (FS203), which accounts for 24,69% of the district population. Mafube Local Municipality (FS205) has the smallest population percentage in the district, and makes up 11,86% of the population.





Data Source: Statistics South Africa

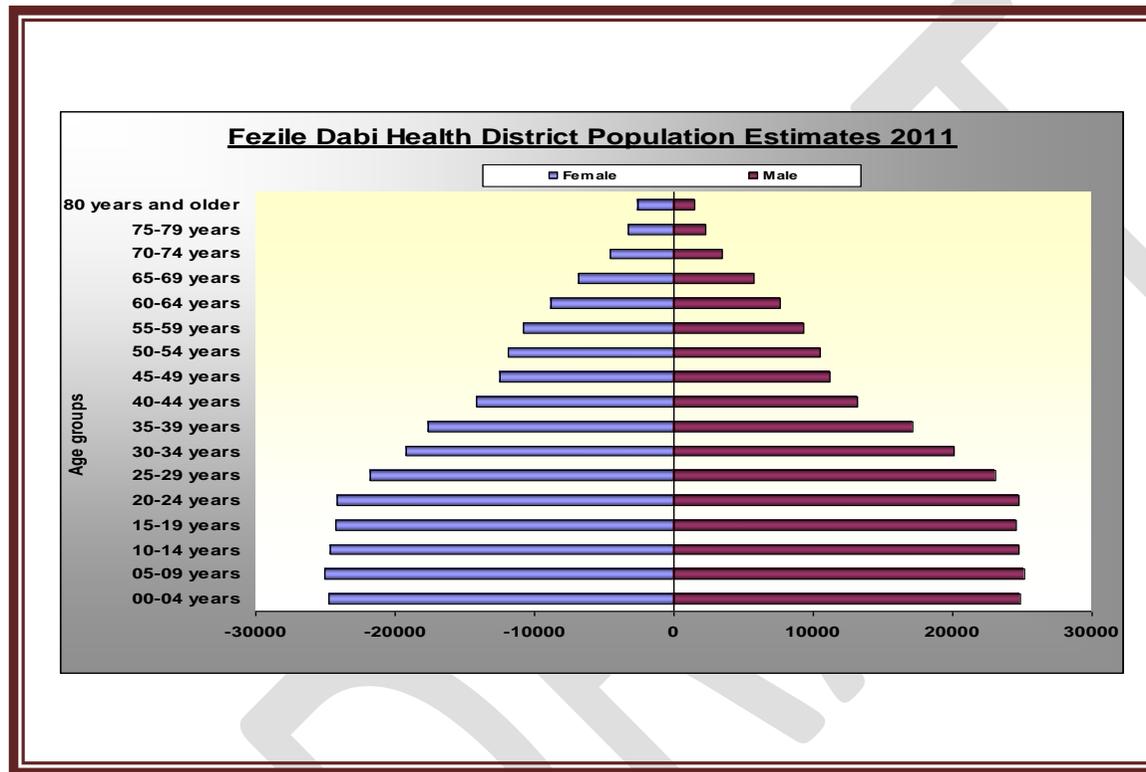
## POPULATION DISTRIBUTION

According to the above table, the district population growth has grown by 13 773 which represents 3% since 2001 to 2007. This growth is slightly higher than the provincial population which shows a decline of 3% for the same period. At the same time, number of households has increased by 28 551, which represents a growth percentage of 24%. The most notable changes which contributed to the increase in population are Moqhaka and Metsimaholo Municipalities., which recorded an increase of 2% and 33% respectively, while Ngwathe and Mafube Local Municipalities show a decline of 2% and 7% respectively

The population is distributed at an average density of 22.3 people/ Km<sub>2</sub>, reflecting a low population pattern primarily owing to the rural area.

Metsimaholo Local Municipality has the highest population density of (90 people/ km<sub>2</sub>) followed by Moqhaka Local Municipality (21, 5 persons /km<sub>2</sub>), Ngwathe Local Municipality (13,5 persons /km<sub>2</sub>) and Mafube Local Municipality (11.7 persons)

## FEZILE DABI POPULATION PYRAMID



*“The composition of the population changes as a result of changes in fertility, mortality or migration. If migration is elective at certain age –groups the sex ratio in those age groups are likely to be affected. The sex ratios are also affected if there are distortions in the age profile of the population such as misstatements or under count of males or females”*

**Data Source:** District Health Plan 2012/2013

The population pyramids illustrate that Fezile Dabi has a Youthful population (population between 15 – 34 years), and the youth will form an increasing proportion of the South African population as fertility continues to decline, and while AIDS related mortality reduces the population in the age group 30 years and over.

## POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS

The FDDM has the broadest population distribution of all the districts in the Free State province. It has the smallest proportion of those less than 20 years (36% as compared to the provincial (Free State) average of 40% and the highest proportion of older people (19% as opposed to the provincial average of 17%). Even in terms of working aged population (22-49 years), it exceeds the provincial average (45% versus 43%) although here the MDM and LDM have a slightly higher proportion (46%). The age dynamics of the region does not necessarily reflect the other social dynamics and this will need to be explored further

*Fezile Dabi having a Youthful population what does this mean?*

*It means that the government programmes should be prioritized and directed to the Youth, in other words the municipality should invest in our Youthful population, through education and skills development.*

*Children will need education and care...*

*Youth needs jobs & are at risk of contracting HIV & falling pregnant,*

*Elderly need care...*

*Due to changes described above, the South African population is poised to deliver a so-called demographic "dividend" or "bonus". This is said to be occurring in countries which experiences fertility declines in concert with declines in the population growth rate and the dependency ratio, & refers to an upsurge in its labour force or people in their working ages relative to dependents such as children & the elderly.*

*The dependency ratio declined from 64% per 100 in 1996 to 57 per 100 in 2007, & it is expected to decline even further to 54 per 100 by 2014. The demographic potential may, however, be offset by the prerequisite that the workforce is skilled, and that enough jobs opportunities be available"*

**Source: Dept. Social Development.**

## SOCIAL INDICATORS

- Fezile Dabi District Municipality has the second smallest population numbers in the Free State, recorded at 488 036 or 17.7% in 2011.
- The region with the largest population in the Free State in 2011 was Mangaung (27.2%), followed by Thabo Mofutsanyane (26.8%) and Lejweleputswa (22.9%).
- Fezile Dabi's population increased from 468 410 in 1996 to 491 304 in 2011 representing a percentage increase of 4.9%.
- The highest increase during the period under review as in Mangaung (19.4%).
- The remaining three region registers negative growth rates
- Overall, the Free State population only increased by 0.3% between 1996 and 2011, which is also the lowest nationally.
- Within the Fezile Dabi District, the population is distributed as follows: Moqhaka (33.0%), Metsimaholo (30.7%), Ngwathe (24.8%) and Mafube (11.5%).

# **M**ILLENIUM DEVELOPMENTAL GOALS

The eight development priorities were termed the Millennium Development Goals, (MDGs). As a member state of the United Nations, South Africa is a signatory to this agreement. The eight MDGs are in their numerical order:

1. To eradicate extreme poverty and hunger
2. To achieve universal primary education
3. To promote gender equality and empower women
4. To reduce child mortality
5. To improve maternal health
6. To combat HIV/AIDS, malaria and other diseases
7. To ensure environmental sustainability
8. To develop a global partnership for development

The Millennium Development Goals and targets come from the Millennium Declaration, signed by 189 countries, including 147 Heads of State and Government, in September 2000 and from further agreement by member states at the 2005 World Summit (Resolution adopted by the General Assembly). The goals and targets are interrelated and should be seen as a whole. They enjoin the developed countries and the developing countries through a partnership that would be conducive to development and to the elimination of poverty.

<b>Millennium Development Goals (MDGs)</b>	
<b>Goals and Targets (from the Millennium Declaration)</b>	<b>Indicators for monitoring progress</b>
<b>Goal 1: Eradicate extreme poverty and hunger</b>	
Target 1.A: Halve, between 1990 and 2015, the proportion of people whose income is less than one dollar a day	1.1 Proportion of population below \$1 (PPP) per day <sup>i</sup> 1.2 Poverty gap ratio 1.3 Share of poorest quintile in national consumption
Target 1.B: Achieve full and productive employment and decent work for all, including women and young people	1.4 Growth rate of GDP per person employed 1.5 Employment-to-population ratio 1.6 Proportion of employed people living below \$1 (PPP) per day 1.7 Proportion of own-account and contributing family workers in total employment
Target 1.C: Halve, between 1990 and 2015, the proportion of people who suffer from hunger	1.8 Prevalence of underweight children under-five years of age 1.9 Proportion of population below minimum level of dietary energy consumption
<b>Goal 2: Achieve universal primary education</b>	
Target 2.A: Ensure that, by 2015, children everywhere, boys and girls alike, will be able to complete a full course of primary schooling	2.1 Net enrolment ratio in primary education 2.2 Proportion of pupils starting grade 1 who reach last grade of primary 2.3 Literacy rate of 15-24 year-olds, women and men
<b>Goal 3: Promote gender equality and empower women</b>	
Target 3.A: Eliminate gender disparity in primary and secondary education, preferably by 2005, and in all levels of education no later than 2015	3.1 Ratios of girls to boys in primary, secondary and tertiary education 3.2 Share of women in wage employment in the non-agricultural sector 3.3 Proportion of seats held by women in national parliament
<b>Goal 4: Reduce child mortality</b>	
Target 4.A: Reduce by two-thirds, between 1990 and 2015, the under-five mortality rate	4.1 Under-five mortality rate 4.2 Infant mortality rate 4.3 Proportion of 1 year-old children immunised against measles
<b>Goal 5: Improve maternal health</b>	
Target 5.A: Reduce by three quarters, between 1990 and 2015, the maternal mortality ratio	5.1 Maternal mortality ratio 5.2 Proportion of births attended by skilled health personnel

Target 5.B: Achieve, by 2015, universal access to reproductive health	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5.3 Contraceptive prevalence rate</li> <li>5.4 Adolescent birth rate</li> <li>5.5 Antenatal care coverage (at least one visit and at least four visits)</li> <li>5.6 Unmet need for family planning</li> </ul>
<b>Goal 6: Combat HIV/AIDS, malaria and other diseases</b>	
Target 6.A: Have halted by 2015 and begun to reverse the spread of HIV/AIDS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6.1 HIV prevalence among population aged 15-24 years</li> <li>6.2 Condom use at last high-risk sex</li> <li>6.3 Proportion of population aged 15-24 years with comprehensive correct knowledge of HIV/AIDS</li> <li>6.4 Ratio of school attendance of orphans to school attendance of non-orphans aged 10-14 years</li> <li>6.5</li> </ul>
Target 6.B: Achieve, by 2010, universal access to treatment for HIV/AIDS for all those who need it	6.6 Proportion of population with advanced HIV infection with access to antiretroviral drugs
Target 6.C: Have halted by 2015 and begun to reverse the incidence of malaria and other major diseases	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6.7 Incidence and death rates associated with malaria</li> <li>6.8 Proportion of children under 5 sleeping under insecticide-treated bednets</li> <li>6.9 Proportion of children under 5 with fever who are treated with appropriate anti-malarial drugs</li> <li>6.10 Incidence, prevalence and death rates associated with tuberculosis</li> <li>6.11 Proportion of tuberculosis cases detected and cured under directly observed treatment short course</li> </ul>
<b>Goal 7: Ensure environmental sustainability</b>	
Target 7.A: Integrate the principles of sustainable development into country policies and programmes and reverse the loss of environmental resources	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7.1 Proportion of land area covered by forest</li> <li>7.2 CO2 emissions, total, per capita and per \$1 GDP (PPP)</li> <li>7.3 Consumption of ozone-depleting substances</li> <li>7.4 Proportion of fish stocks within safe biological limits</li> </ul>
Target 7.B: Reduce biodiversity loss, achieving, by 2010, a significant reduction in the rate of loss	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7.5 Proportion of total water resources used</li> <li>7.6 Proportion of terrestrial and marine areas protected</li> <li>7.7 Proportion of species threatened with extinction</li> </ul>
Target 7.C: Halve, by 2015, the proportion of people without sustainable access to safe drinking water and basic sanitation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7.8 Proportion of population using an improved drinking water source</li> <li>7.9 Proportion of population using an improved sanitation facility</li> </ul>
Target 7.D: By 2020, to have achieved a significant improvement in the lives of at least 100 million slum dwellers	7.10 Proportion of urban population living in slums <sup>ii</sup>

Goal 8: Develop a global partnership for development	
<p>Target 8.A: Develop further an open, rule-based, predictable, non-discriminatory trading and financial system</p> <p>Includes a commitment to good governance, development and poverty reduction – both nationally and internationally</p> <p>Target 8.B: Address the special needs of the least developed countries</p> <p>Includes: tariff and quota free access for the least developed countries' exports; enhanced programme of debt relief for heavily indebted poor countries (HIPC) and cancellation of official bilateral debt; and more generous ODA for countries committed to poverty reduction</p> <p>Target 8.C: Address the special needs of landlocked developing countries and small island developing States (through the Programme of Action for the Sustainable Development of Small Island Developing States and the outcome of the twenty-second special session of the General Assembly)</p> <p>Target 8.D: Deal comprehensively with the debt problems of developing countries through national and international measures in order to make debt sustainable in the long term</p>	<p><i>Some of the indicators listed below are monitored separately for the least developed countries (LDCs), Africa, landlocked developing countries and small island developing States.</i></p> <p><u>Official development assistance (ODA)</u></p> <p>8.1 Net ODA, total and to the least developed countries, as percentage of OECD/DAC donors' gross national income</p> <p>8.2 Proportion of total bilateral, sector-allocable ODA of OECD/DAC donors to basic social services (basic education, primary health care, nutrition, safe water and sanitation)</p> <p>8.3 Proportion of bilateral official development assistance of OECD/DAC donors that is untied</p> <p>8.4 ODA received in landlocked developing countries as a proportion of their gross national incomes</p> <p>8.5 ODA received in small island developing States as a proportion of their gross national incomes</p> <p><u>Market access</u></p> <p>8.6 Proportion of total developed country imports (by value and excluding arms) from developing countries and least developed countries, admitted free of duty</p> <p>8.7 Average tariffs imposed by developed countries on agricultural products and textiles and clothing from developing countries</p> <p>8.8 Agricultural support estimate for OECD countries as a percentage of their gross domestic product</p> <p>8.9 Proportion of ODA provided to help build trade capacity</p> <p><u>Debt sustainability</u></p> <p>8.10 Total number of countries that have reached their HIPC decision points and number that have reached their HIPC completion points (cumulative)</p> <p>8.11 Debt relief committed under HIPC and MDRI Initiatives</p> <p>8.12 Debt service as a percentage of exports of goods and services</p>
<p>Target 8.E: In cooperation with pharmaceutical companies, provide access to affordable essential drugs in developing countries</p>	<p>8.13 Proportion of population with access to affordable essential drugs on a sustainable basis</p>
<p>Target 8.F: In cooperation with the private sector, make available the benefits of new technologies, especially information and communications</p>	<p>8.14 Telephone lines per 100 population</p> <p>8.15 Cellular subscribers per 100 population</p> <p>8.16 Internet users per 100 population</p>

The National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP) acts as a policy coordination and indicative planning tool for the three spheres of government. It incorporates the key demographic, economic and environmental trends and a set of normative principles to guide dialogued about governments spatial priorities. It is not intended to be a national development plan; it just guides national planning and intergovernmental planning co-ordination.

*“The plight of persons who are stuck in poverty traps in areas with low prospects for sustaining livelihoods in the foreseeable future, may well be better served by forceful efforts directed at human capital development”*

A Free State Growth and Development Strategy, is a long- term view of a province’s development trajectory.

It should be informed by both the national priorities (identified from the NSDP) and local priorities (identified from the

municipal plans. It serves as a core alignment mechanism for each province, providing a co-ordination and implementation strategy.

An integrated Development Plan (IDP) is a strategic planning tool used by municipalities to integrate planning across all spheres and sector in respect of municipal geographic space. It is a legislative requirement, and is a basis for municipal budget.

## NSDP

NATIONAL SPATIAL  
DEVELOPMENT  
PERSPECTIVE

## FSGDS

FREE STATE  
GROWTH AND  
DEVELOPMENT  
STRATEGY

## IDP

INTEGRATED  
DEVELOPMENT  
PLAN

# CHAPTER 1

## IDP FRAMEWORK & PROCESS PLAN

## PURPOSE

The objective of this framework is to document an Integrated Development Planning Framework in terms of the Municipal Structure Act 117 of 1998 and the Municipality Systems Act 32 of 2000.

## SCOPE

This framework is applicable to Integrated Development Planning and specifically for Fezile Dabi District Municipality and the Local Municipalities in the district, namely, Ngwathe, Metsimaholo, Mafube and Moqhaka.

## INTRODUCTION

A Framework is a basic conceptual structure to allow a homogenous and disciplined handling of an organizational objective, with pre-defined common deliverables. A framework may further be defined as a well defined tactic that, master the complex environment of an organization with simplicity. The Integrated Development Planning Framework (herein referred to as the Framework) is a guideline to acceptable practice municipal integrated planning for Fezile Dabi District Municipality. The Framework sets out a sustainable, consistent and cooperative approach towards municipal planning for Fezile Dabi District Municipality and the four local Municipalities (Ngwathe, Metsimaholo, Mafube and Moqhaka) within the district. The Framework is a joint initiative of Fezile Dabi District Municipality and the local municipalities within the district.

## What is Municipal Integrated Development Planning

Municipal integrated Development Planning is a process of identifying current and future developmental needs at a local level in order to inform decision makers on a way to manage available resources to best address these needs. This is to be carried out in a way that not only meets the local needs but should be aligned to the broader provincial and national objectives. According to section 24, subsection 1 of the Municipal Systems Act, No. 32 of 2000:

*“The planning undertaken by a municipality must be aligned with, and complement, the development plans and strategies of other affected municipalities and other organs of state so as to give effect to the principles of co-operative government contained in section 41 of the Constitution.”*

Subsection 2 further states that: *“Municipalities must participate in national and provincial development programmes as required in section 153 (b) of the Constitution.”*

The Integrated Development Planning (IDP) is a strategic management plan that brings together the various economic environmental, infrastructural and spatial plans into a structured form in order to achieve a sustainable, developmental outcome. In essence an IDP is a super plan designed to integrate all the local development needs in a cohesive developmental framework that co-ordinates the work of the local and other spheres of government for a sustainable economic and social outcome.

**According to Chapter 2 of the Planning and Performance Management Regulation of 2001**, The IDP is however not a static document and should remain dynamic throughout the planning horizon. Section 34 of the Municipal Systems Act No. 32 of 2000 states: A municipal council—

Must review its integrated development plan—

- i. Annually in accordance with an assessment of its performance measurements in terms of section 41; and
  - ii. To the extent that changing circumstances so demand; and
- a. May amend its integrated development plan in accordance with a prescribed process.

An IDP should therefore continuously be subjected to constant monitoring, review and re-alignment.

#### **Foundations of Integrated Development Planning Framework**

The IDP Framework is framed on three key pillars namely Sustainability, Integration and Partnerships.

**Sustainability** – Sustainability means thinking beyond the specific sector plans and indeed beyond narrow local short term needs and focusing on enhancing the current and long term (future) generation economic, social and environmental needs. This requirement for sustainability is placed on the municipality through section 26 of the Municipal Systems Act No. 32 of 2000 that states that the *integrated development plan must reflect the municipal council's vision for the long term development of the municipality with special emphasis on the municipality's most critical development and internal transformation needs*. The emphasis for sustainability is a policy directive flowing from the National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP), with the first principle clearly stating that *"rapid economic growth that is **sustained and inclusive** is a pre-requisite for the achievement of other policy*

*objectives, among which poverty alleviation is important"*. A move towards sustainability therefore seeks to reach the best encompassing outcome within the prevailing context.

**Integration** – The fifth principle of the NSDP clearly defines this need for integration by stating that *"In order to overcome the spatial distortions of apartheid, future settlement and economic development opportunities should be channeled into activity corridors and nodes that are adjacent to or that link the main growth centres. Infrastructure investment should primarily support localities that will become major growth nodes in South Africa and the SADC region to create regional gateways to the global economy"*. Integration is about corporative competition. While within the same municipalities competing needs have to be accommodated with limited resources, different local municipalities making up Fezile Dabi District Municipality also have competing needs. However each one of this families of the District Municipality have their unique economic potential, social challenges and unique environments and strong relationships do exist between these uniqueness of each local municipality. Integration is therefore needed across different sectors, localities, levels of planning and decision making. Strong relationships may for example exist between planning for extraction industry in one local municipality, farming in another municipality and eco-tourism in the third municipality. Integration requires planning to consider all these planning choices in totality rather than in isolation. Integration requires one to look at the sum of these individual parts while not neglecting the specific output of the individual. Indeed the Municipal Systems Act No. 32 of 2000 state:

- 1) The planning undertaken by a municipality must be aligned with, and complement, the development plans and strategies of other affected municipalities and other organs of state so as to give effect to the principles of co-operative government contained in section 41 of the Constitution.
- 2) Municipalities must participate in national and provincial development programs as required in section 153 (b) of the Constitution

**Partnerships** – The need for co-operative government is indeed placed on all spheres of government by not only the Constitution but by all key policy directives. For the municipality in particular the Municipal Systems Act No. 32 of 2000 states that

1. Municipalities must exercise their executive and legislative authority within the constitutional system of co-operative government envisaged in section 41 of the Constitution.
2. For the purpose of effective co-operative government, organized local government must seek to:
  - i. **Develop common approaches for local government as a distinct sphere of government;**
  - ii. **Enhance co-operation, mutual assistance and sharing of resources among municipalities;**
  - iii. **Find solutions for problems relating to local government generally; and**

**iv. Facilitate compliance with the principles of co-operative government and inter-governmental relations.**

*Indeed the Municipal Services Act requires of the municipality not only to engage government stakeholders in compiling their integrated development plans, but also local communities. The Constitution, Municipal Structures Act. No. 117 of 1998 and the Municipal Systems Act No. 32 of 2000 not only requires of the municipality to consult but to be responsive to the needs of the community. Partnership is not only key to effective planning but assist the planer to gain a better understanding of the needs, expectations, and priorities and constrains in meeting this needs. In addition to breaking territorial silos, this promotes informed and accountable engagement and decision*

## THE PLANNING FRAMEWORK

### According to section 27 of the Municipal Systems Act No. 32 of 2000:

- (1) Each district municipality (such as Fezile Dabi), within a prescribed period after the start of its elected term and after following a consultative process with the local municipalities within its area, must adopt a framework for integrated development planning in the area as a whole.
- (2) A framework referred to in subsection (1) binds both the district municipality and the local municipalities in the area of the district municipality, and must at least:
  - a. Identify the plans and planning requirements binding in terms of national and provincial legislation on the district municipality and the local municipalities or on any specific municipality;
  - b. Identify the matters to be included in the integrated development plans of the district municipality and the local municipalities that require alignment;
  - c. Specify the principles to be applied and co-ordinate the approach to be adopted in respect of those matters; and
  - d. Determine procedures:
    - i. For consultation between the district municipality and the local municipalities during the process of drafting their respective integrated development plans; and
    - ii. To effect essential amendments to the framework.

This is supported by section 84 (1a) of the Municipal Structures Act. No. 117 of 1998 which states that one of the key functions and powers of a district municipality as integrated development planning for

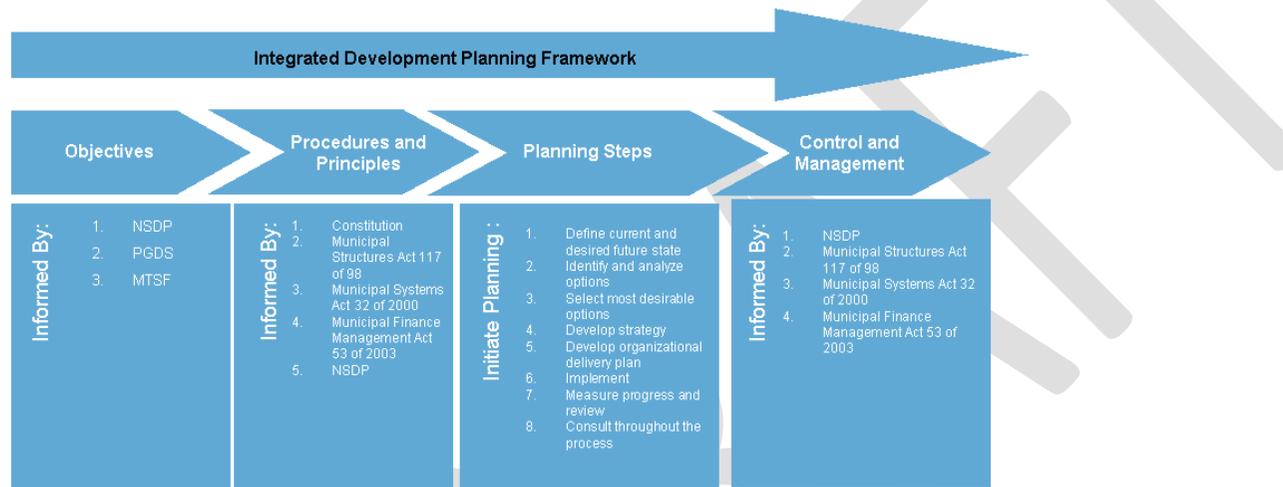
the district municipality as a whole including a framework for integrated development plans for the local municipalities within the area of the district municipality, taking into account the integrated development plans of those local municipalities. **While the two acts places the responsibility of developing an the integrated development planning framework on the district municipality, the acts expressly requires of such process to be inclusive through consultation and buy in from the local municipalities within that district.**

The IDP framework therefore facilitates consistency and acceptable practice IDP planning by setting out the:

- **Objectives** of the planning process by providing a consistent framework to focus planning on achieving outcomes as envisaged by the three spheres of the government.
- **Procedures and principles** that provide guidance on how to achieve the desired outcome.
- **Planning Steps** that offer a process to follow when undertaking integrated development planning.

- **Control and Management** of the framework that provide guidance on how to keep alive the framework throughout its lifespan through active measurement and control.

The IDP Framework for the district which is informed by certain responsibilities entrusted to district and local municipalities in terms of legislation. The summary of the Planning Framework is presented in Figure 1 below.



**Figure 1:** Summary of Planning Framework

## Objective

The Fezile Dabi District Municipality's IDP Framework model should stem from the district vision that is informed by the MTSF, PGDS and the NSDP. Thus, the objectives of the Fezile Dabi District Municipality Integrated Development Framework include among other the following:

- To serve as guiding model for integrated development planning by the FDDM and local municipalities.
- To involve and integrate all relevant role-players.
- To ensure that all the local authorities in the district fulfill the responsibilities entrusted to them by legislation in the form of powers & functions.
- To bring about cooperative governance in regional context and to align and coordinate development planning at local government level.
- To guide the modus operandi of local government, in particular with regard to aspects of integrated development planning.
- To ensure that the needs of communities and interest groups are identified, acknowledged and addressed.
- To ensure and coordinate the effective use of resources (financial, human & natural).
- To keep up to date with legislation.

- To ensure that the above-mentioned approved policy and strategies are taken into consideration in future development planning in the Fezile Dabi District.

## Procedures and Principles

Municipal Integrated Development Planning is informed by a number of international, national, provincial and local developmental objectives. These objectives, discussed briefly below, especially at the higher spheres of government, require of an integrated plan to harness and direct the local actions towards meeting high level broad developmental targets identified by these documents. **This is due to the fact that local municipality, by virtue of their proximity among the spheres of government, is where impact and measurement of such developmental objectives can be experienced. A local municipality therefore, being at the coal face of development impact, becomes the most important conduit of transmission of developmental objectives as well as the most reliable feedback loop to inform current and future developmental planning.**

Government however is made up of several sector specific departments whose responsibilities range from housing, water and sanitation, security, electricity and economic development. All these sectors, while deriving their development plans from the same national and provincial developmental objectives, are tasked with the delivery of sector specific objectives necessary to meet the government's development objectives. These sector specific targets are cascaded down to the municipality level where their implementation takes place. **However, these plans are derived under conditions of limited resources and this requires cooperative implementation across the sectors in order to derive maximum benefit from such plans.**

A housing sector plan for example impacts on the local economic development through the selection of the location with the proximity to places of employment defining the access to local industry and employment opportunities, this in turn impacts on land use and transporting infrastructure planning, power supply, waste and sanitation, health and environmental impact. This example in turn addresses a number of national and provincial developmental objectives such as those identified in the MTSF and PGDS the connectivity to some of which without vertical and horizontal integration, partnerships and cooperation of the different sector specific disciplines may be lost. In addition to that these sector specific developmental actions may straddle a number of neighboring municipalities' necessitated cooperative interaction in implementation across municipalities. Integrated planning is the glue that binds these co-operations, integrations and partnerships to provide a helicopter view necessary to bring cohesion to the sector plans bringing a joint focus to the different plans. This is required to focus the different plans towards a shared vision that is directed towards achieving the same developmental objectives, while addressing specific local needs. In addition through monitoring and measurement, this provides a feedback loop to the national and provincial plans providing reliable information for future planning.

### **Millennium Development Goals**

The Millennium Development Goals (MDG's) were derived from the United Nation Millennium Declaration, adopted by 189 nations in 2000. Most of these goals were set to be achieved by 2015 on the basis of the global situation during the 1990's.

The MDG's provide commitment by the international community to a vision of human development as a key to sustainable social and economic progress in all the countries. These goals are internationally recognized and accepted as a framework for the measurement of human development and social and economic progress.

For South Africa as a country this goals have been embraced and milestones towards the achievement of these goals are tracked. The new ministry of planning within the presidency for example will use these data and trends on development indicators to inform strategic planning and performance monitoring. These will also provide a framework for the new planning and monitoring ministries as well as being accepted to focus the different plans towards a shared vision that is directed towards achieving the same developmental objectives, while addressing specific local needs. The MDG's therefore can be identified as the one of the key documents informing strategic planning.

### **National Spatial Development Perspective**

The universe of government service provision is quite large and diverse. Faced with a multitude of competing needs, with limited resources, it is conceivably tempting to try and satisfy the popular needs, especially as represented by the loudest voices. These however may result in an unfocused depletion of these scarce resources with very little to show for the effort. The National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP) is essentially a framework to guide prioritization, resource allocation and implementation in the government planning and service provision universe. This is intended to bring about focused intergovernmental planning in order to achieve as much of the needs in the face of the limited resources.

**Principle 1:** Rapid economic growth that is sustained and inclusive is a pre-requisite for the achievement of other policy objectives, amongst which poverty alleviation is a key issue.

**Principle 2:** Government has a constitutional obligation to provide basic services to all citizens (e.g. water, energy, health and educational facilities) wherever they reside.

**Principle 3:** Beyond the constitutional obligation identified in Principle 2 above, government spending on fixed investment should be focused on localities of economic growth and/or economic potential in

order to gear up private sector investment, stimulate sustainable economic activities and create long-term employment opportunities.

**Principle 4:** Efforts to address past and current social inequalities should focus on people, not places. In localities where there are both high levels of poverty and demonstrated economic potential, this could include fixed capital investment to exploit the potential of those localities. In localities with low economic potential, government should, beyond the provision of essential services, concentrate primarily on human capital development. This can be done by providing social transfers such as grants, education and training poverty relief programmes and reducing migration costs by providing labour market intelligence so as to give people better information, opportunities and capabilities. This would enable people to gravitate, if they so desired to localities that are more likely to provide sustainable employment and economic opportunities. In addition, sound rural development planning, aggressive land and agrarian reform as well as expansion of agricultural extension services are crucial

**Principle 5:** In order to overcome the spatial distortions of apartheid, future settlement and economic development opportunities should be channeled into activity corridors and nodes that are adjacent to or link the main growth centres. Infrastructure investment should primarily support localities that will become major growth nodes. In summary, therefore, our development planning theoretical perspective to inform our analysis of challenges at hand as well as our response is that:

As stated in the NSDP of 2006, The NSDP should be understood both as a policy directive in terms of its methodology and principles and an indicative tool in terms of its content. That is:

- The principles and methodology of the NSDP should inform the development plans,

policies and programmes of all spheres and agencies of government as a matter of policy;

- The details of economic potential and demographic patterns in localities to be the subject of ongoing dialogue among state and non-state actors; and
- Districts and metropolitan areas should be positioned as the geographical units for building an understanding of the nature and distribution of potential and demographic patterns across the country.

That is while each sphere of government has instinct tasks informed by the local context and capacity, the approach followed in their planning should be informed both the methodology and principles documented in the NSDP. The NSDP however is not a static document and through the adoption of its approach in the local context, new opportunities can be identified. The NSDP argues that undertaking infrastructure investment and development-spending decisions on the basis of an area's unique potential is likely to produce far more desirable and sustainable outcomes in terms of addressing poverty and improving growth. Sub-national structures such as districts/metro areas have a valuable role to play in capitalizing on synergies and in harnessing the energies and contributions of a range of state and non-state actors and role players, with a view to enhancing an area's social and economic potential. Proceeding from the premise that district and metropolitan areas are to be the pivotal sites on which to build an understanding of the nature and distribution of regional potential across the country, it is envisaged that the NSDP will be used in three ways by national government departments, provinces, and district and metropolitan municipalities. All three spheres of government will use the notion of potential to inform rigorous analysis of the space economy and to identify the areas of economic significance and the relative and dynamic comparative advantage. This process should be informed by the mapping of demonstrated economic potential as a set out below:

Having identified the areas of potential within districts and metropolitan municipalities, the NSDP principles should then be used to inform the structure and necessary dialogue between the spheres, and between departments on strategic decisions and around infrastructure investment and development spending. Provinces and municipalities will also inform the debates by incorporating the NSDP approach into PGDS and IDP to ensure a top-down and bottom-up process of planning and development.

The NSDP will also guide the relations between the three spheres of government and organs of state within each sphere, in as far as it concerns making resources allocation choices and trade-offs, and optimizing the intergovernmental impact of public investment within the districts and metropolitan areas of the country.

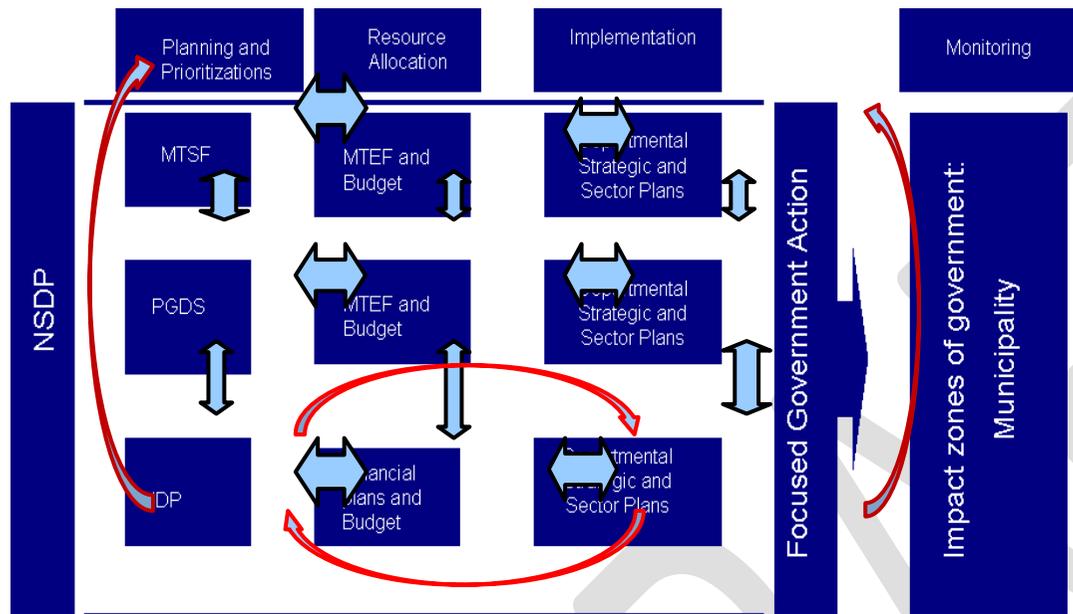
The importance of encouraging cooperation and focusing effort by the different spheres of government is summarized as follows by the NSDP of 2006:

The relationship between national development strategies and plans such as sector strategies, departmental strategic plans, the medium term strategic framework and expenditure framework; provincial plans such as provincial growth and development strategies (PGDS) and municipal IDP should be determined in the context of the following set of intergovernmental planning principles:

- The NSDP guidelines and principles should inform planning for development in all spheres.

- District and metropolitan IDP should reflect the convergence of government (national, provincial and local, as well as organs of state within each sphere) commitment and actions within these municipal areas and should represent the outcomes of intergovernmental coordination and alignment. Ultimately, these plans should become the local expressions of national development plans. Government's development plans and intentions should be based on a shared and common definition of the economic potential of each district and metropolitan area.
- Such a process would provide government with a rigorous appreciation of development potential of each district and metropolitan area and would feed into an iterative process for the future review, refinement and further elaboration of the NSDP.
- The necessary mutual alignment between national principles/guidelines, sectoral departmental planning requirements (standards, provincial strategies) and local needs, conditions and resources must be conducted in the spirit of cooperative governance, whereby the plans of one sphere should support those in another.

**This should not entail that all plans are in complete agreement but rather that, at the very least, contradictory policies are discouraged and that the spheres align themselves around the national policy priorities.** This is illustrated in figure 2 below.



**Figure 2:** The influence of the NSDP guiding prioritisation, resources allocation and implementation in the intergovernmental development –planning landscape (Source: NSDP-2006)

The NSDP acknowledges that the processes of developing IDP by local government structures, which themselves cover the length and breadth of the country, is a critical element of spatial planning.

Based on the discussion above, it is evident that the NSDP is a key and very important document of eminence in any government planning. Most importantly while providing the framework for planning, the NSDP recognizes the peculiarities of local needs potential and capacity. This in essence while focusing government efforts towards a set of principles and goals, it encourages decentralized planning and strategy implementation based on the local context.

## **M**edium Term Strategic Framework

The Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) may be viewed as strategic goals giving life to the NSDP principles, while working towards the achievement of the MDG's. The MTSF is a national governments document providing clear unambiguous goals and objectives towards which the different spheres and agencies of government should work towards in a medium term. While the NSDP offers the principles to guide the planning process towards greater alignment, the MTSF moves further by explicitly identifying specific goals. This provides a clearer picture for the lower spheres of government while planning by providing key focus areas towards which development planning should be focused in order to achieve the long term development principles.

### **Provincial Growth and Development Strategy**

While the NSDP and MTSF paints the national spatial picture in addition to providing the principles and approach to focus the planning process and strategic focus in the medium term, **the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (PGDS) is a framework to drive implementation within the province.** The PGDS is an indication of the various developments potential in the province broken down to a district level, the province's proposed economic growth trajectory and an indication of the sectors as well as areas of comparative advantage in which the province plans to invest.

Prepared within the ambit of cooperative government the PGDS, in as much the same way as the IDP, provides an arena for intergovernmental debate regarding the implications of other strategies and plans in government. It also enables the three spheres to not only be involved in the preparation of the PGDS, but also to align

**Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, Act 108 of 1996:** The Constitution mandates the local sphere

Infrastructure investment and development spending decisions, such as those captured in the IDP and sector plans, to link these to budgets, and to collectively play a part in their implementation.

Provinces play an important of further grounding the national strategies and within the realities and specificities by guiding local government in the development and implementation of IDP and programmes for sustainable development within the local context. The PGDS is based on a long-term view of a province's development trajectory. While not a provincial plan, the PGDS is a strategic statement for the provinces providing specific focus to the different departments, sectors and local spheres of government within the province. Through alignment with the MTSF and employing the NSDP principles and approach the PGDS provides alignment for the different spheres, sectors and agencies of government operating within the province towards the attainment of the national developmental goals. To that effect while not providing the approach towards planning as documented in the NSDP, the PDSG is the document a municipality should look into when defining the goals to which implemented strategies through the IDP, should be focused. That is, the IDP strategies should show alignment to the greater PGSD goals in order to ensure an achievement of national development goals.

### **Legal and Statutory Requirements**

The need for Integrated Development Planning is a legislative requirement outlined in a number of legislative and policy documents, with some providing direct guidance and directions on the framework processes to be adopted in the development and implementation of the IDP. The subsections below list some of these legislations and policies that have direct implication on what the IDP is about.

of government to:

- Participate in corporative governance as outlined in chapter 3;
- Strives to achieve the objects of local government set out in section 152;
- Gives effect to its developmental duties as required by section 153; and
- Together with other organs of state contribute to the progressive realization of fundamental rights contained in sections 24 to 32.

**National Spatial Development Perspective 2006:** The NSDP through methodology and principles provides a framework for best practice planning. In addition to that the broad principles provide guidance for prioritization, resource allocation and implementation in government integrated development planning. The methodology outlined in the NSDP provides a framework for robust analysis during planning.

**Provincial Growth and Development Strategy:** The PGDS through methodology and principles provides a framework for development planning for the province as well as the overall provincial goals to harness the entire region towards a shared objective.

**Municipal Systems Act No. 32 of 2000:** The Municipal Systems Act is the key legislation that provides a clear outline of the functions and responsibilities of the local sphere of government. Chapter 5 of the act explicitly provides the mechanisms and direction on Integrated Development Planning.

**Municipal Structure Act No. 117 of 1998:** Municipal Structure Act outlines the organization, responsibilities, purpose and objectives of the local sphere of government. The act further outlines the relationships between the municipalities at a local and district level.

**Municipal Finance Management Act, Act No. 56 of 2003 (MFMA):** The MFMA outlines the management and allocation of municipal resources and makes and makes special emphasis on alignment of the IDP and the Budget. Chapter 5 outlines the need for cooperative government and need for alignment as required by the IDP processes.

**Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations, 2001:** The Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations set out in detail the requirements for Integrated Development Plans and Performance Management System.

**Disaster Management Act 57 of 2002 :** The Disaster Management Act, in which the main features of disaster management are described as preventing or reducing disasters, mitigation, preparedness, response, recovery and rehabilitation. The Disaster Management Act, 2002, provides for the declaration of disasters through national, provincial and local level government.

**Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act 13 of 2005:** The intergovernmental Relations Framework Act provides a framework for intergovernmental relations, key to the promotion of cooperative government outlines in the Constitution.

## Mechanisms and Procedures for Alignment

Section 23 of the Municipal Systems Act states that:

- (1) A municipality must undertake developmentally-oriented planning so as to ensure that it:
  - a. Strives to achieve the objects of local government set out in section 152 of the Constitution;
  - b. Gives effect to its developmental duties as required by section 153 of the Constitution; and
  - c. Together with other organs of state contribute to the progressive realization of the fundamental rights contained in sections 24, 25, 26, 27 and 29 of the Constitution.
- (2) Subsection (1) must be read with Chapter I of the Development Facilitation Act, 1995

Section 24 states that:

- (1) The planning undertaken by a municipality must be aligned with, and complement, the development plans and strategies of other affected municipalities and other organs of state so as to give effect to the principles of co-operative government contained in section 41 of the Constitution.

Section 25 states that:

- (1) Each municipal council must, within a prescribed period after the start of its elected term, adopt a single, inclusive and strategic plan for the development of the municipality which:
  - a. Links, integrates and co-ordinates plans and takes into account proposals for the development of the municipality;

- (2) Municipalities must participate in national and provincial development programmes as required in section 153 (b) of the Constitution.
- (3) If municipalities are required to comply with planning requirements in terms of national or provincial legislation, the responsible organs of state must:
  - a. Align the implementation of that legislation with the provisions of this Chapter; and
  - b. Chapter; and
  - c. In such implementation:
    - i. Consult with the affected municipality; and
    - ii. Take reasonable steps to assist the municipality to meet the time limit mentioned in section 25 and the other requirements of this Chapter applicable to its integrated development plan.
- (4) An organ of state initiating national or provincial legislation requiring municipalities to comply with planning requirements, must consult with organised local government before the legislation is introduced in Parliament or a provincial legislature, or, in the case of subordinate legislation, before that legislation is enacted.
  - b. Aligns the resources and capacity of the municipality with the implementation of the plan;
  - c. Forms the policy framework and general basis on which annual budgets must be based;
  - d. Complies with the provisions of this Chapter; and
  - e. Is compatible with national and provincial development plans and planning requirements binding on the municipality in terms of legislation.

**A**lignment across different sectors, levels of planning and decision makers is essential for successful integrated planning. Alignment of planning by the different spheres (municipal, provincial and national), agencies and departments of government remains a pivotal task that all the Local and District municipalities should strive for. This is aimed at harnessing capacity and resources towards a shared goal, avoiding the different spheres, agencies and sector departments from acting in an unfocussed and uncoordinated way that may lead to wastage and duplication of effort.

Alignment in municipal planning takes place at two levels namely horizontally and vertically. Vertical alignment means being cognoscente of the planning from the different levels of planning into account in a top down and bottom up approach, with the higher order of planning influencing the focus of localized planning in order to achieve shared goals and objectives. In the same way that the higher order influences the local planning, the local area with its unique needs and spatial characteristics need to inform and influence the higher order planning as envisaged by the NSDP 2006.

Horizontal alignment on the other hand requires of the local municipality planning to be aligned with planning by other spheres of government at the same level of planning in order to make sure that decisions made in one sector complement and not compromise decisions and interests in another planning sphere or sector. Alignment means considering choices as a total package that contributes towards a shared goal.

For FDDM this will include district alignment workshops to be held with provincial government, local municipalities, sector departments and service providers to align their planning. This will be supplemented by engagement through specific project planning. This will also include engagement

with stakeholders such as sector departments during integrated planning where the specific sector plans, projects and programmes will be discussed and interrogated for alignment to local and district vision. In addition to the district alignment workshops, the IDP Representatives Forum should provide an opportunity for FDDM to consult with broader stakeholders such as the community members.

**In essence alignment for FDDM will take place:**

- Between the local municipalities and the district municipality to ensure that planning processes and issues are coordinated and addressed jointly towards addressing district goals;
- Between the local municipalities in line with the spirit of cooperative government;
- Between the sector departments planners and the IDP managers within and across the local municipalities, the district municipalities to focus different planning activities are aligned towards a shared vision and goals;
- Between the district and local municipalities and the national and provincial sector departments, particularly in terms of budget alignment; and
- Between the local municipalities and the local stakeholders specifically community members. This is critical to ensuring that the local needs are taken into account when planning takes place. Most importantly this will provide an opportunity to align expectations with available capacity and resources. Figure 3 shows the framework for alignment between the different municipal, provincial and local functions

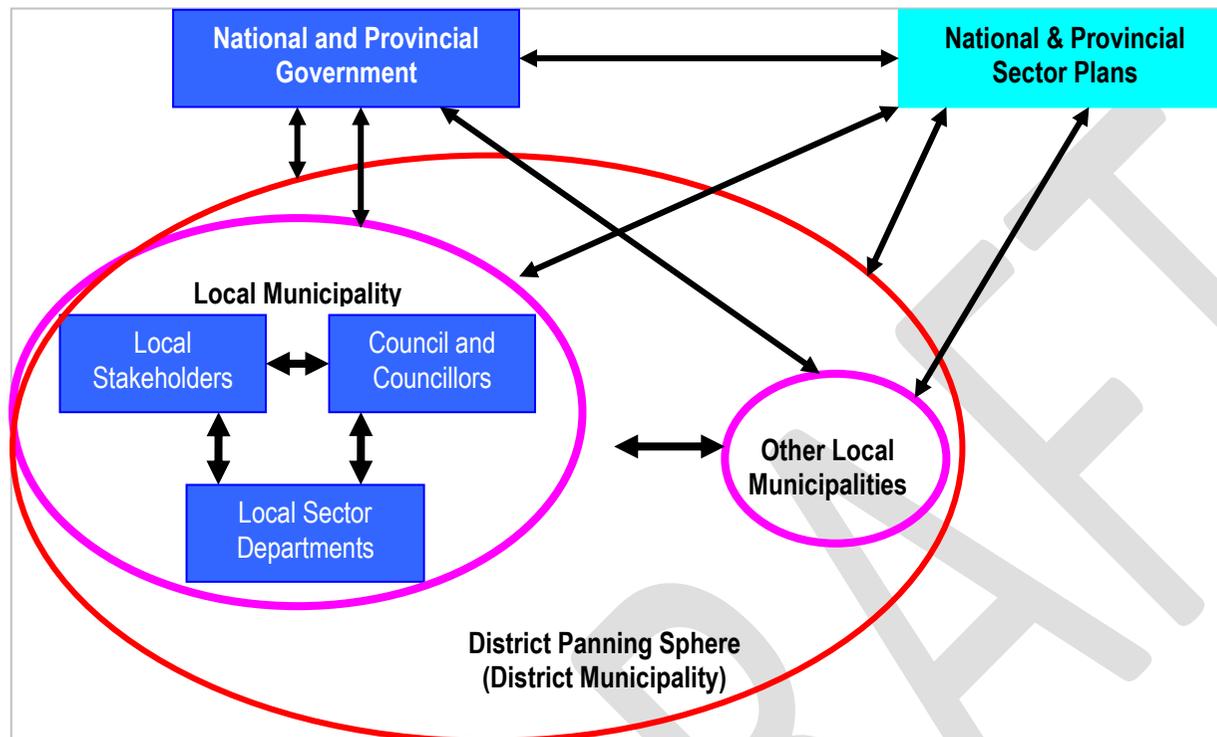


Figure 3: Framework for Integration and Alignment

## PARTIES TO DISTRICT ALIGNMENT

While the Municipal Structures Act and the Municipalities Systems Act envisage the district municipality to take a leading role in ensuring alignment between the local municipalities, the Act also identifies a number of parties required to ensure integration when planning. **Integrated planning then becomes a responsibility of every sphere, organ and agency of the government responsible for delivering services necessary to reach the shared national goal.**

**The District Intergovernmental Forum:** The Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act requires as a start for the establishment of a district intergovernmental forum to promote and facilitate intergovernmental relations between the district municipality and the local municipalities in the district. Section 26 outlines the role of a district intergovernmental forum as being to serve as a consultative forum for the district municipality and the local municipalities in the district to discuss and consult each other on matters of mutual interest, including:

- a. Draft national and provincial policy and legislation relating to matters affecting local government interests in the district;
- b. the implementation of national and provincial policy and legislation with respect to such matters in the district;
- c. Matters arising in the Premier's intergovernmental forum affecting the district;
- d. Mutual support in terms of section 88 of the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act No. 117 of 1998);
- e. The provision of services in the district;
- f. Coherent planning and development in the district;

- g. The co-ordination and alignment of the strategic and performance plans and priorities, objectives and strategies of the municipalities in the district; and
- h. Any other matters of strategic importance which affect the interests of the municipalities in the district

Subsection 1 of section 25 of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act stipulates the composition of the district intergovernmental forum as one made up of:

- a. The mayor of the district municipality;
- b. The mayors of the local municipalities in the district or, if a local municipality does not have a mayor, a councilor designated by the municipality; and
- c. The administrator of any of those municipalities if the municipality is subject to an intervention in terms of section 139 of the Constitution.

Municipal Council mayor of the district municipality or, if that municipality is subject to an intervention, the administrator of the municipality is the chairperson of the forum.

Subsection 3 further states that the chairperson of the forum may invite any person not mentioned in subsection (1) to a meeting of the forum.

It is clear from the discussion above that municipal council and the mayors of the municipalities as owners of integrated planning are ultimately responsible for ensuring alignment of plans within the district. **This is, key to development of the IDP for a municipality in that buy in and ownership should reside at the highest level of the municipality to drive focus and harness resources towards a shared goal.**

The Intergovernmental Framework Relations Act in section 27 further states that:

1. The chairperson of the district intergovernmental forum:
  - a. Convenes the meetings of the forum; and
  - b. Determines the agenda for a meeting of the forum.
2. Suggestions for inclusion in the agenda for a meeting may be submitted by local municipalities in the district to the chairperson.
3. A majority of the local municipalities in a district may request the chairperson in writing:
  - a. To convene a meeting of the district intergovernmental forum at a time and place set out in the request; or
  - b. To include in the agenda for a meeting any specific matter for discussion.
4. The chairperson of the district intergovernmental forum presides at meetings of the forum, but if that chairperson is absent from a meeting, the members present must elect another member to preside at the meeting.
5. The forum must meet at least once per year with service providers and other role players concerned with development in the district to co-ordinate effective provision of services and planning in the district.
6. The district municipality is responsible for providing administrative and other support services to the forum.

**Inter-municipality Forums:** In addition to the district inter-governmental Forum the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act provides for the establishment of inter-municipality forums. Section 28 of the Act states that

1. Two or more municipalities may establish an inter-municipality forum to promote and facilitate intergovernmental relations between them.
2. The composition, role and functioning of an inter-municipality forum established in terms of subsection (1) must be determined by agreement between the participating municipalities.

The role of such an inter-municipality forums according to section 29 is to serve as a consultative forum for the participating municipalities to discuss and consult each other on matters of mutual interest, including:

- a. Information sharing, best practice and capacity building;
- b. Co-operating on municipal developmental challenges affecting more than one municipality; and
- c. Any other matter of strategic importance which affects the interests of the participating municipalities.

Among these inter-municipality forums one can identify the following key committees/forums:

**The IDP Alignment Committee** - The alignment Committee consisting of all Municipal Managers, IDP Managers and Chairpersons of IDP Steering Committees and municipal sector departments will need to meet at least once during the year before the IDP plans are concluded and or reviewed to ensure alignment of plans among the different local municipalities as well as those of the sector departments as envisaged by the Municipal Systems Act.

**The IDP Managers Forum** – Should be formed as part of the IDP process and should continue to function throughout the lifespan of the IDP. The IP forum made up of IDP managers may

be considered as the life blood of the IDP in that the forum should meet more frequently, at least every quarter to continuously review any new developments concerning development planning. Because of their function in facilitating, reporting and documentation of the IDP Processes and activities, IDP management is a cross cutting function that not only brings about consistency and integration. The IDP forum is well placed to also facilitate the documentation and management of the district memory. It is envisaged that the IDP forum will not only facilitate knowledge sharing but ensure that this is transmitted throughout the district.

**IDP Representative Forum** - Formed as part of the IDP process should function throughout the development and review of the IDP. This forum represents a cross section of interests in the IDP process from Municipal Council and Officials as well as a broad section of external interests including Community Based Organizations, Non-Governmental Organizations, Business Community, Government Sector Departments, Ward Committees and Community Development Workers.

**District IDP Steering Committee** - Consisted of the planning the portfolio committee of council together with the IDP managers and heads of department of the local and district municipality. The committee is seen the structure that puts it together. The committee should function throughout the development and review of the IDP's. The importance of this structure is critical in putting all the district and local efforts together. This is due to the fact that during IDP development and review a number activities focusing on specific sectors will take place. In an uncoordinated this activities may become haphazard with a lot of duplication taking place.

**District Sector Forum** - Consists of the Municipal manager, Deputy Municipal Manager, General Managers, IDP managers as well as line managers. As the people responsible for all municipal functions, the technical and sectional officers had to be fully involved during integrated

planning by:

- Provide relevant technical, sector specific and financial information for priority issues;
- Contribute technical expertise;
- Provide departmental capacity and resource input; and
- Assist in the alignment of different sectors and line function programmes and plans to the IDP process.

**District Executive Committee Forum** – As the ultimate owners and drivers of the district development agenda the district and local municipalities Mayors and Municipal Managers should meet at least quarterly, to ensure continued alignment between the local and district municipalities. It is envisaged that representatives of the provincial government will be invited to such meetings in order to ensure continued alignment between the district and provincial plans and policies, while ensuring that the district IDP takes place within available provincial capacity and resources.

Some of the parties, with their various roles and responsibilities of involvement in the development of an IDP are as follows:

- **Municipal Council** - Overall management and responsibility for the development and approval of the IDP.
- **Councillors** – Communication and alignment of the community needs and expectations to the municipal development plans through facilitation of constituency participation in the IDP.
- **Municipal Manager** - Management and responsibility for the development of the IDP as

delegated by Municipal Council and management of the execution of the IDP plans.

- **Municipal Officials** – Provide sector specific, line technical expertise and execution of the IDP plans.
- **IDP Manager** – Facilitation and management of the development of the IDP through coordination of the development and review of the IDP process.

Section 31 of Municipal Systems Act, 2000 identifies the involvement of the provincial governments as an interest party where the MEC for local government in the province may, subject to any other law regulating provincial supervision of local government:

- a. Monitor the process followed by a municipality in terms of section 29;
- b. Assist a municipality with the planning, drafting, adoption and review of its integrated development plan;
- c. Facilitate the co-ordination and alignment of:
  - i. Integrated development plans of different municipalities, including those of a district

The NSDP 2006 provides a framework with principles and methodology towards integrated planning. The NSDP should be understood both as a policy directive in terms of its methodology and an indicative tool in terms of its content. That is:

- The principles and methodology of the NSDP should inform the development plans, policies and programmes of all spheres and agencies of government as a matter of policy;

municipality and the local municipalities within its area; and

- ii. The integrated development plan of a municipality with the plans, strategies and programmes of national and provincial organs of state;
- d. Take any appropriate steps to resolve disputes or differences in connection with the planning, drafting, adoption or review of an integrated development plan between:
    - i. A municipality and the local community; and
    - ii. Different municipalities.

### **Planning Process**

Integrated planning departs from two fundamental realities in South Africa. The first fundamental reality is that local government is not only an impact zone of government in delivering services, but also a development zone where social and economic development takes place. The second reality is that given the historical skewed development focus in South Africa, the space social and economic development is largely skewed. Understanding the local social and economic space potential and development level is key to how resources will be allocated

- The details of economic potential and demographic patterns in localities to be the subject of ongoing dialogue among state and non-state actors; and
- Districts and metropolitan areas should be positioned as the geographical units for building an understanding of the nature and distribution of potential and demographic patterns across the country.
- Adoption of NSDP approach means:

- Rigorous analysis of the space economy to identify areas of economic significance with a view to focusing government investment and development interventions to ensure maximum and sustainable impact;
- Capitalizing on complementarities and facilitating consistent and focused decision making by providing a common platform for structured dialogue; and
- Moving beyond focusing on mere integration and coordination procedures, to establishing processes and mechanisms to bring about strategic coordination, interaction and alignment within government.

#### **Process Plan**

According to section 28 of the Municipal Systems Act, 2000

1. Each municipal council, within a prescribed period after the start of its elected term, must adopt a process set out in writing to guide the planning, drafting, adoption and review of its integrated development plan.
2. The municipality must through appropriate mechanisms, processes and procedures established in terms of Chapter 4, consult the local community before adopting the process.
3. A municipality must give notice to the local community of particulars of the process it intends to follow.

Section 29 further outlines the process to be followed thus:

1. The process followed by a municipality to draft its integrated development plan, including its consideration and adoption of the draft plan, must:
  - a. Be in accordance with a predetermined programme specifying time-frames for the different steps;

- b. Through appropriate mechanisms, processes and procedures established in terms of Chapter 4, allow for:
  - i. The local community to be consulted on its development needs and priorities;
  - ii. The local community to participate in the drafting of the integrated development plan; and
  - iii. Organs of state, including traditional authorities, and other role players to be identified and consulted on the drafting of the integrated development plan;
- c. Provide for the identification of all plans and planning requirements binding on the municipality in terms of national and provincial legislation; and
- d. Be consistent with any other matters that may be prescribed by regulation.

2. A district municipality must:

- b. Plan integrated development for the area of the district municipality as a whole but in close consultation with the local municipalities in that area;
- c. Align its integrated development plan with the framework adopted in terms of section 27; and
- d. Draft its integrated development plan, taking into account the integrated development processes of, and proposals submitted to it by the local municipalities in that area.

3. A local municipality must:

- a. Align its integrated development plan with the framework adopted in terms of section 27; and
- b. Draft its integrated development plan, taking into account the integrated development processes of, and proposals submitted to it by the district municipality.

## Phases of Developing an Integrated Development Plan

The process undertaken to produce an IDP takes place in 5 phases.

### Phase 1: Situational Analysis

According to the NSDP 2006 *“Each sphere of government has its own distinct development tasks and related planning frameworks corresponding to the scale of operations and the area of jurisdiction. For these frameworks to be coordinated and strategically aligned, each sphere will have to adopt the NSDP methodology and approach”.*

This phase offers a municipality to carry out rigorous analysis of the space social and economic information. The purpose of this phase is to ensure that planning will be based on local priority needs and problems provide an understanding of available and accessible resources and capacity and the dynamics impacting on development within the local context. The collation of data necessary for rigorous analysis maybe collated from a number of sources such as Statistics South Africa. This is also the first step in community participation through bodies such as Community Development Workers (CDW) and the Ward Committees and Councillors in order to identify the needs of the community. Rigorous analysis of the data is required with the view to identify priority issues and problems. The analysis will include not only the sector specific issues and problems but afford the

### Phase 2: Strategies

During this phase the municipality identifies mechanisms and tactics necessary to address the issues and problems identified in phase 1. This involves broad inter-sectoral debates in order to identify priority issues. A consideration of policy guidelines and principles, available resources and competing

municipality to also take vigorous analysis of available capacity and resources necessary to address such issues. This phase focuses on the types of problems faced by the local populace and the causes of these problems as well as identifying potential development nodes.

Analysis is a fundamental element of all planning processes. In terms of development planning, the key areas analyzed are reflected by the following definition of development planning as described in the Development Bank of South Africa (DBSA) Guidelines to District Analysis: *“A participatory process to integrate economic, sectoral, spatial, social, institutional, environmental and fiscal strategies in order to support the optimal allocation of scarce resources between sectors and geographical areas and across the population, in a manner that provides sustainable growth, equity and the empowerment of the poor and marginalized.”*

The quality of analysis is important at this stage as the analysis not only provides current perspective but assist with the identification of needs and potential for development. Through analysis of the different sectors informing the development planning can the local and district municipalities come up with a credible IDP document. Analysis in this case involves a participatory process by the different sectoral, special social, institutional and environmental strategies to inform optimal allocation of resources. Analysis therefore includes collection and interpretation of data from broad categories that may be summed by demography, economic, environmental and risks management, infrastructure or access to services and labour.

requirements as discussed through workshops at local and district level to ensure a well informed and facilitated strategic debates. Inter-government and sector alignment issues are taken care of order to avoid duplication and wastage. The phase entails:

- **Development of a Vision** – vision being the long term goal or destination that the

municipality wants to attain by addressing the issues identified in Phase 1.

- **Defining Development Objectives** - development objectives are clear measurable achievements that the municipality wants to achieve in a medium term in order to work towards their stated vision. This should be informed by the issues that need to be addressed as identified in Phase 1.
- **Development Strategies** – development strategies may be defined as the tactics or road map that the municipality needs to follow to meet the development objectives and address the issues
- **Project Identification** – projects or work packages with clearly defined key performance indicators will be identified through which the road map or development strategies can be implemented. This should be linked to clear development objectives with a clear alignment to the issues identified in Phase 1.

This is one of the most important steps in district and local planning in that a common ground, establishing of where the district is, where it needs to be and how it attains the desired destination in terms of the key development indicators identified by the NSDP.

This phase will also include a SWOT analysis of identified development strategies and projects in order to make sure that the strategies and projects identified are not only practical but are attainable. Interaction and engagement with across the local municipalities and with the district municipality, service provision agencies and sector departments will take place in order to assist with proper SWOT analysis as well as to avoid duplication of the identified projects. This phase will also include workshops with the IDP steering committee will also take place in order to present the identified issues and challenges. Where a review of an existing IDP is involved, this will include a review of the

existing project implementation reports, where possible an evaluation of the impact and progress towards attainment of the development objectives. It is envisaged that at this stage draft budget allocations, project lists and a revised objectives, strategies and draft projects for municipalities will be tabled at different regional forums for alignment and refinement

### Phase 3: Projects

This phase involves project identification and prioritization through:

- Departmental assessment and selection;
- Informed municipal budgeting;
- Council project prioritization workshops;
- Alignment meetings with the district municipality and sector agencies; and
- Alignment with neighboring municipalities.

This phase involves ensuring a smooth planning link by providing an opportunity for detailed and concrete projects planning processes. A Project Task Team in consultation specialist from provincial and national agencies and from the communities or stakeholders affected by the projects is expected to be more involved throughout this phase. The outcomes flowing from this phase include for each project:

- Identification of beneficiaries of selected project;
- The costs associated with delivering the project and the sources of the funds required for the project;

- The duration and project management required for the project including identification of the project sponsor and manager; and
- The monitoring process, key milestones and Key Performance Indicators linking the project to the development objectives. This includes the impact of individual project in relation to NSDP 2006 principles.

#### **Phase 4: Integration**

This phase involves the integration of all the projects identified in Phase 3. This will include further analysis of their contribution towards meeting the objectives outlined in Phase 2. This integration phase provides an overall picture of the different departmental and sector plans and their contribution towards meeting the strategic objectives of the local and district municipality. The different departmental and sector plans should now be integrated into an Integrated development plan outlining the overall objectives of the local municipality, their contribution towards achievement of the local objectives in addressing identified issues and challenges and their contribution to the district development objectives. In addition to the integrated development plans the IDP will outline issues such as strategies in dealing with AIDS, poverty alleviation and disaster management in addition to specific sector plans. These strategies should be integrated with the overall IDP.

As described in section 24 of Municipal Systems Act, 2000 planning undertaken by a municipality must be aligned with, and complement, the development plans and strategies of other affected municipalities and other organs of state so as to give effect to the principles of co-operative government. Furthermore, municipalities are obliged to participate in national and provincial development programmes as required in section 153(b) of the Constitution.

This phase therefore envisages broad and extensive consultation not only to align the plans with the different spheres of government but to also inform and invite comment from different local partners. This process is vital to management of expectations and buys in from those parties on whom these projects will be impacted such as the local communities, NGO's and the private sector. The proposed projects will be presented to IDP Representative Forum, the local municipalities IDP Steering Committee, District Sector Committee, District Executive Committee, District Alignment Forum and the provincial and national sector departments for alignment. From the input received from these broad consultations, revisions will be carried out by the Projects Task Teams comprising the different planners and sector departments. A revised project proposal flowing from this process will document:

- A 5-year municipal action; financial & capital investment plan/programme;
- Integrated Spatial Development Framework;
- Integrated programme for LED, environmental issues, poverty alleviation, gender equity and HIV/AIDS;
- Institutional plan for implementation management;
- Consolidated monitoring/performance management system;
- Integrated sector plans; and
- A disaster Management Plan

These plans will be consolidated and documented into an Integrated Development Plan.

## Phase 5: Approval

This final phase of the process includes the IDP Steering Committee finalizing and documenting the IDP and presentation of the document to council for consideration and adoption. According to section 25 of the Municipal Systems Act:

1. Each municipal council must, within a prescribed period after the start of its elected term, adopt a single, inclusive and strategic plan for the development of the municipality which:
  - a. Links, integrates and co-ordinates plans and takes into account proposals for the development of the municipality;
  - b. Aligns the resources and capacity of the municipality with the implementation of the plan;
  - c. Forms the policy framework and general basis on which annual budgets must be based;
  - d. Complies with the provisions of this Chapter (chapter 5 of the Municipal Systems Act, 2000); and
  - e. Is compatible with national and provincial development plans and planning requirements binding on the municipality in terms of legislation.
2. An integrated development plan adopted by a municipal council in terms of subsection (1) may be amended in terms of section 34 (annual revision and amendment of the IDP) and remains in force until an integrated development plan is adopted by the next elected council.
3. (a) A newly elected municipal council may, within the prescribed period referred to in subsection (1), adopt the integrated development plan of its predecessor, but before taking a decision it must comply with section 29 (1) (b) (i), (c) and (d).
  - a. A newly elected municipal council that adopts the integrated development plan of its predecessor with amendments, must effect the amendments in accordance with the process referred to in section 34 (b).

4. A municipality must, within 14 days of the adoption of its integrated development plan in terms of subsection (1) or (3):
  - a. Give notice to the public:
    - i. Of the adoption of the plan; and
    - ii. That copies of or extracts from the plan are available for public inspection at specified places; and
  - b. Publicize a summary of the plan.

It is at this phase that the final document is adopted that will focus municipality's efforts in the medium term. The IDP will be presented to the council for consideration and adoption. **It is envisaged at this stage that once the IDP has been considered and adopted, the council through ward committees and local councillors will consult the local community to close the loop opened during phase 1 of this process. This not only ensures that the public is informed as required by subsection 4 of section 25 of the Municipal Systems Act, 2000, but also to ensure that the local community expectations are aligned to what is planned by the municipality.** It is further envisaged that before being adopted by the Municipal Council, all relevant stakeholders and interested parties, including other spheres of government are given a chance to comment on the draft plan, thus giving the approved plan a sound basis of legitimacy, support and relevance

According to section 26 of the Municipal Systems Act, 2000 an integrated development plan must reflect:

- (a) The municipal council's vision for the long term development of the municipality with special emphasis on the municipality's most critical development and internal transformation needs;
- (b) An assessment of the existing level of development in the municipality, which must include an identification of communities which do not have access to basic municipal services;

- (c) The council's development priorities and objectives for its elected term, including its local economic development aims and its internal transformation needs;
- (d) The council's development strategies which must be aligned with any national or provincial sectoral plans and planning requirements binding on the municipality in terms of legislation;
- (e) A spatial development framework which must include the provision of basic guidelines for a land use management system for the municipality;
- (f) The council's operational strategies;
- (g) Applicable disaster management plans;
- (h) A financial plan, which must include a budget projection for at least the next three years; and
- (i) The key performance indicators and performance targets determined in terms of section 41.

According to section 32 of the Municipal Systems Act, 2000:

1. The municipal manager of a municipality must submit a copy of the integrated development plan as adopted by the council of the municipality, and any subsequent amendment to the plan, to the MEC for local government in the province within 10 days of the adoption or amendment of the plan.
2. The copy of the integrated development plan to be submitted in terms of paragraph (a) must be accompanied by:
  - a. A summary of the process referred to in section 29 (1);
  - b. A statement that the process has been complied with, together with any explanations that may be necessary to amplify the statement; and
  - c. In the case of a district and a local municipality, a copy of the framework adopted in terms of section 27.
3. The MEC for local government in the province may, within 30 days of receiving a copy of an integrated development plan or an amendment to the plan, or within such reasonable longer period as may be approved by the Minister, request the relevant municipal council:
  - a. To adjust the plan or the amendment in accordance with the MEC's proposals, if the plan or amendment
    - i. Does not comply with a requirement of this Act; or
    - ii. Is in conflict with or is not aligned with or negates any of the development plans and strategies of other affected municipalities or organs of state; or

- b. To comply with the process referred to in section 29, or with a specific provision of this Act relating to the process of drafting or amending integrated development plans if the municipality has failed to comply with that process or provision, and to adjust the plan or the amendment if that becomes necessary after such compliance.
4. A municipal council must consider the MEC's proposals, and within 30 days of receiving the MEC's request must:
  - a. If it agrees with those proposals, adjust its integrated development plan or amendment in accordance with the MEC's request; or
  - b. If it disagrees with the proposals, object to the MEC's request and furnish the MEC with reasons in writing why it disagrees.
5. On receipt of an objection in terms of subsection (4) (b) the MEC may refer the municipality's objection to an ad hoc committee referred to in section 33 for decision by the committee. If the MEC decides to refer an objection to an ad hoc committee, the objection must be referred within 21 days of receipt of the objection.

### **Mechanisms and Procedures for Consultation**

Section 88 of the Municipal Structures Act, 1998 requires of the district and local municipalities to carry out their business in cooperation. The section states that:

1. A district municipality and the local municipalities within the area of that district municipality must co-operate with one another by assisting and supporting each other.
2. (a) A district municipality on request by a local municipality within its area may provide financial, technical and administrative support services to that local municipality to the extent that that district municipality has the capacity to provide those support services.
  - b. A local municipality on request of a district municipality in whose area that local municipality falls may provide financial, technical and administrative support services to that district municipality to the extent that that local municipality has the capacity to provide those support services.
  - c. A local municipality may provide financial, technical or administrative support services to another local municipality within the area of the same district municipality to the extent

that it has the capacity to provide those support services, if the district municipality or Municipal Systems Act, 2000 in Chapter 4 outlines the need and mechanisms for participation by the community in the local sphere of government. Section 16 not only requires of a municipality to encourage but to build and make it the municipality business to foster community participation by stating that:

1. A municipality must develop a culture of municipal governance that complements formal representative government with a system of participatory governance, and must for this purpose:
  - a. Encourage, and create conditions for, the local community to participate in the affairs of the municipality, including in:
    - i. The preparation, implementation and review of its integrated development plan in terms of Chapter 5;
    - ii. The establishment, implementation and review of its performance management system in terms of Chapter 6;
    - iii. The monitoring and review of its performance, including the outcomes and impact of such performance;
    - iv. The preparation of its budget; and
    - v. Strategic decisions relating to the provision of municipal services in terms of Chapter 8;
  - b. Contribute to building the capacity of:
    - i. The local community to enable it to participate in the affairs of the municipality; and
    - ii. Councillors and staff to foster community participation; and
  - c. Use its resources, and annually allocate funds in its budget, as may be appropriate for the purpose of implementing paragraphs (a) and (b).
2. Subsection (1) must not be interpreted as permitting interference with a municipal council's right to govern and to exercise the executive and legislative authority of the municipality.

that local municipality so requests.

**Section 17** guidance for community participation envisaged in section 16 thus:

1. Participation by the local community in the affairs of the municipality must take place through:
  - a. Political structures for participation in terms of the Municipal Structures Act;
  - b. The mechanisms, processes and procedures for participation in municipal governance established in terms of this Act;
  - c. Other appropriate mechanisms, processes and procedures established by the municipality;
  - d. Councillors; and
  - e. Generally applying the provisions for participation as provided for in this Act.
2. A municipality must establish appropriate mechanisms, processes and procedures to enable the local community to participate in the affairs of the municipality, and must for this purpose provide for:
  - a. The receipt, processing and consideration of petitions and complaints lodged by members of the local community;
  - b. Notification and public comment procedures, when appropriate;
  - c. Public meetings and hearings by the municipal council and other political structures and political office bearers of the municipality, when appropriate;
  - d. Consultative sessions with locally recognised community organisations and where appropriate, traditional authorities; and
  - e. Report-back to the local community.
3. When establishing mechanisms, processes and procedures in terms of subsection (2) the municipality must take into account the special needs of:
  - a. People who cannot read or write;
  - b. People with disabilities;
  - c. Women; and
  - d. Other disadvantaged groups.

4. A municipal council may establish one or more advisory committees consisting of persons who are not councillors to advise the council on any matter within the council's competence. When appointing the members of such a committee, gender representation must be taken into account.

**Section 18** provides guidelines for communication with regard to community participation as follows:

- (1) A municipality must communicate to its community information concerning:
  - a. The available mechanisms, processes and procedures to encourage and facilitate community participation;
  - b. The matters with regard to which community participation is encouraged;
  - c. The rights and duties of members of the local community; and
  - d. Municipal governance, management and development.
- (2) When communicating the information mentioned in subsection (1), a municipality must take into account:
  - a. Language preferences and usage in the municipality; and
  - b. The special needs of people who cannot read or write.

As one of the fundamental features of the integrated development planning process the involvement of community and stakeholder organizations participation of affected and interested parties is very important to ensure that the IDP addresses core developmental issues as experienced by the citizens of the District. The public not only plays a vital role in communication their needs but in the monitoring of municipal performance, and ensuring the accountability of the Local and District Municipality. It is imperative therefore that in the development and review of the IDP Municipalities must conduct community participation programmes for development, implementation as well as the reviews of the IDP at both local and district level. Continued engagement through constituency engagement by councillors provides an important engagement mechanism between the community and the Municipality. This is envisaged to be augmented through forums such as the Mayoral and Ward Committee general meetings. In addition to that efforts should be made to broaden participation

through invitation of organisations representing wider interests in the IDP Representative Forum and ensure their continued participation throughout the process.

In addition to that a process plan for public information sharing should be put in place. This could include but not limited to:

- Schedule timeframes for the planned meeting for community participation including IDP public participation forums.
- Identify target groups for public participation consultations.
- Development of strategies to manage community expectations and develop realistic, achievable outcomes of the consultation process.
- Mechanisms such as print media, local newsletter and electronic media can be used to inform the community of the planned public participation meeting.

### **Status of the IDP in Municipal Planning**

Section 34 of Municipal Systems Act, 200 places the IDP at the top of all planning processes within the municipality. The section states that:

- (1) **An integrated development plan adopted by the council of a municipality:**
  - a. **Is the principal strategic planning instrument which guides and informs all planning and development, and all decisions with regard to planning, management and development, in the municipality;**
  - b. **Binds the municipality in the exercise of its executive authority, except to the extent of any inconsistency between a municipality's integrated development plan and national or provincial legislation, in which case such legislation prevails; and**

- c. **Binds all other persons to the extent that those parts of the integrated development plan that impose duties or affect the rights of those persons have been passed as a by-law.**
- (2) **A spatial development framework contained in an integrated development plan prevails over a plan as defined in section 1 of the Physical Planning Act, 1991 (Act No. 125 of 1991).**

According to section 6 of the Local Government: municipal Planning and Performance Management regulation, a municipality's integrated development plan must:

- (1) Inform the municipality's annual budget that must be based on the development priorities and objectives referred to in section 26 (c) of the Municipal Systems Act, 2000 and the performance targets set by the municipality in terms of regulation 12; and
- (2) Be used to prepare action plans for the implementation of strategies identified by the municipality.

## Action Plan

The action plan documents the activities, milestones and key dates in the IDP process.

Activity	Milestone/Deliverable	Responsibility	Date/Duration
<b>Planning Phase</b>			
Meeting with Local Municipalities to discuss the Framework	Adoption of the framework and process plan	Municipal Council	
Advertisement for stakeholder participation	Invitation for stakeholder participation outlining the venues, dates and times for such participation	Municipal Council, Municipal Manager and Ward Committee	
IDP Steering Committee Preparatory Meeting	Preparatory meeting to outline the schedule and scope of the Steering Committee.	Municipal Manager, IDP Managers and Municipal Council	
IDP Management Forum Preparatory Meeting	An opportunity for IDP managers to bring about clear and consistent alignment towards planning	IDP Managers	
<b>Analysis Phase</b>			
District Representative Forum – Alignment workshop and Evaluate information from PMS monitoring	Reports on progress made by the District, Sector departments and the Local Municipalities	District Mayor	
Collation of information from different databases	Augment and update information held by the municipality to gain appreciation of local, provincial and national spatial context.	Municipal Steering Committees and IDP Managers	
Input from community participation by	Gain better understanding of local stakeholders	Councillors and Ward Committees	

Based on the two sections above it is clear that the IDP is the supreme plan for a municipality, not only informing municipal strategies. The IDP should inform the different planning processes within a municipality with contribution and alignment to the IDP required from all the planning processes within the municipality. It is thus envisaged that in all the planning carried out by a municipality, co integration and alignment to municipal shared vision should be guided by the IDP.

## Performance Management

Chapter 6 of Municipal Systems Act, 2000 provides guidance to the municipal Performance Management Systems (PMS). This in line with the IDP provides a framework for integrated planning and the monitoring of the impact of the projects and strategies adopted in the IDP. The act requires of the municipality not only to develop the performance management system, but also to communicate same to boarder stakeholders to the IDP process.

Councillors	expectations and needs		
Meeting of the local IDP Steering Committee	To collate, analyse and gain a clear picture of the local context.	IDP Steering Committee	
Finalisation of the local Analysis Report			
Presentation of local input to district IDP Steering Committee	To collate, integrate and gain a clear picture of the district context.	Ward Councillors and IDP Managers	
Finalisation of local and district analysis report		IDP Steering Committee	
<b>Strategy Phase</b>			
Review of Local Strategic Guidelines, Strategies, and development of preliminary projects with preliminary budget allocations	Approved local strategy reports	Municipal Councils	
District Management Committee Meeting	Presentation and alignment of the local vision, strategy and objectives to district strategy	District Management Committee	
Strategy sessions with local municipalities, government service providers, sector departments (local, provincial and national)	Presentation and alignment of the local, district, provincial and national sector departments.	IDP Managers and Municipal Council	
IDP Steering Committee workshop to receive representations on issues identified during the phase	Bring together the inputs to the phase from the different stakeholders. A draft strategy, objectives and project report	IDP Steering Committee	
Adoption of key strategies, objectives and draft deliverable and projects	Adoption of the draft strategy, objectives and project report.	Municipal Council	
Submission to the MEC for Local Government and Traditional Affairs	Communicate the draft strategy, objectives and project report to the MEC for local Government and Traditional Affairs	Municipal Council	
<b>Project Phase</b>			
Development of project proposals	Project proposals	Sector Departments	
Alignment workshop	Integrated and aligned Project Proposals of the District, Local Municipalities, sector Departments and other service providers	Municipal Managers	
SWOT analysis	Strategic analysis of each project identifying benefits and impact towards meeting strategic objectives	IDP Steering Committee	
Project identification and prioritization	Identified projects and their level of priority	IDP Steering Committee	
IDP Representative Forum	Final analysis of identified projects	IDP Managers	
Inform Municipal Budget	Communicate identified projects and draft budgets.	IDP Steering Committee	
Council project prioritization workshop	Presentation of proposed projects and their level of priority for discussion by council.	Municipal Council	
Alignment meetings with Local Municipalities and sector agencies	Alignment of selected projects and their level of prioritization with sector plans.	District Municipality	
Alignment with neighboring municipalities	Alignment of selected projects and sector plans with neighboring municipalities plans.	Municipal Managers	
Distinct Alignment Committee meeting	Aligned district projects and priorities.	District and local Municipalities	
IDP steering Committee meeting	To bring together the different plans into an integrated plan.	IDP Steering Committee	
Compilation of draft IDP	Draft IDP	IDP Steering Committee	

Adoption of draft IDP	Adopted IDP plan by Municipal Council	Municipal Council	
Submission for Provincial Assessment		Municipal Council	
<b>Approval Phase</b>			
Advertising for public comments	Input by stakeholders to draft IDP	Municipal Council	
Assessment / incorporation of comments	Updated draft IDP	IDP Steering Committee	
Final Editing and Proof Reading	Final IDP	IDP Steering Committee	
Final approval by Council	Approval and final comments by Municipal Council of the IDP	Municipal Council	
Final Steering Committee Meeting	Update of the IDP and incorporation of Municipal Council comments	IDP Steering Committee	
Final Adoption by Municipal Councils	Adoption by Municipal Council of the final IDP	Municipal Council	
Submission to MEC		Municipal Council	

### Control and Management

According to subsection 2 of the section 27 of the Municipal Systems Act, 2000 it is required of the district municipality and local municipalities within the district not only to document a framework, but also procedures to effect essential amendments to the framework. It is thus critical that critical that the monitoring and review mechanisms of the framework be catered for in the framework. It is envisaged that an amendment to the framework will be the last resort in the planning process. Where it becomes essential to amend the framework however it is recommended that a due process be undertaken when affecting same through:

- A due diligence process to avoid unnecessary amendments;
- The Municipal Council duly provide the necessary mandate for the amendment to the framework;

he Municipal Council as the sponsors and owners of the framework lead the process towards the amendment of the framework;

- That the Municipal Manager as the chief administrator of the municipality take a management role of the process supported by the IDP managers through facilitation and coordination of the process; and
- That during such process, a programme plan in the amendment of the framework, with deviations that may affect the entire district planning process be highlighted, documented and duly reported.

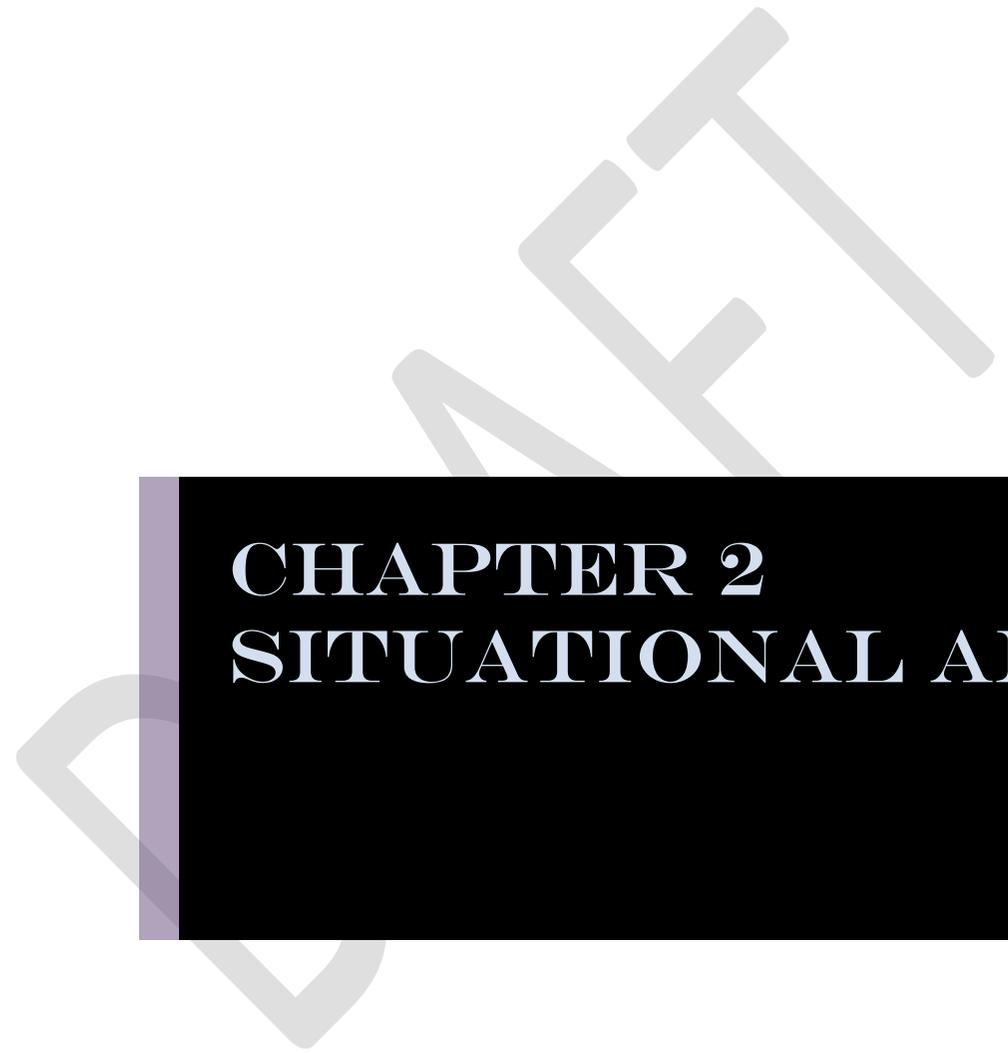
▪ T  
h  
a  
t  
t

## IDP PROCESS PLAN 2013/14

IDP PHASE	TIME	IDP PROGRAMME	PROPOSED ACTIVITIES	BUDGET PROCESS
Planning	September 2013	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IDP Steering Committee Preparatory Meeting</li> <li>• IDP Management Forum Preparatory Meeting</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Preparatory meeting to outline the schedule and scope of the steering Committee</li> <li>• An Opportunity for IDP Managers to bring about a clear consistent alignment towards planning.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•</li> </ul>
Analysis	October 2013	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Collation of information from different databases</li> <li>• Engagements with the National &amp; Provincial Coordinating Forums</li> <li>• Engagements with various sector department</li> <li>• Alignment of workshop to evaluate information from PMS and Monitoring and Evaluation</li> <li>• Conduct Public Participation (Input from community participation by Councillors)</li> <li>• Assessment of existing level of development ( Check progress on implementation through, M &amp; E)</li> <li>• Engage the Private sector as well as Other Institutions (e.g. Financial Institutions) &amp; Civic Associations.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adoption of proposals from IDP engagements and IDP guidelines from COGTA</li> <li>• Meeting with various sector departments to discuss the outcome of the assessment of IDPs, capacity / support &amp; assistance to be provided to municipalities in terms of analysis as well as their plans.</li> <li>• Measure implemented projects against IDP objectives and strategies. (PMS, M&amp;E)</li> <li>• Assessments of achievements of the previous IDP ( PMS report &amp; Monitoring and Evaluation reports)</li> <li>• Sector plans, Integrated Programmes identification and review</li> <li>• Meetings with Public Participation Officers(PPOs, ward Councillors, CDW's and Ward committees,</li> <li>• Request assistance in terms of assessment of level of development (e.g. Economic growth) measures to attain eradicate poverty and create employment.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•</li> </ul>

Strategies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tabulate the <b>Analysis Report</b> to the Steering committee.</li> <li>• Review :<b>Vision and Mission</b></li> <li>• Alignment of <b>objectives and strategies</b></li> <li>• Consultation &amp; Workshop (through, <b>Strategic Sessions, and IDP Rep Forum</b>)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Discuss the analysis report with the Steering Committee &amp; reformulate Objectives &amp; strategies based on the findings, also contemplating at the national &amp; provincial imperatives</li> <li>• Review Vision and Mission of the District (steering committee)</li> <li>• Discuss <b>priority issues</b></li> <li>• Discuss the achievements &amp; challenges of the previous IDP (Monitoring &amp; Evaluation Reports)</li> <li>• Consultation with sector departments and all stakeholders to consolidate issues.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•</li> </ul>
December 2013	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Alignment workshop (LM s and DM)</li> <li>• Confirmation of project lists from local municipalities</li> <li>• Integration of programmes</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Revise IDP projects</li> <li>• Alignments of projects with sector strategic plans, FSGDS, NSDP, District &amp; Local Municipalities &amp; other service providers</li> <li>• Workshop the Representative Forum</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•</li> </ul>
December 2013	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Integration of programmes</li> <li>• Confirmation of ongoing projects project and status quo, and integration of sector departments programmes.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bring together different plans into integrated plans</li> <li>• Preparation and finalization of draft IDP</li> <li>• Presentation of the draft IDP steering committee and other stakeholders.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•</li> </ul>
January 2014	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compilation and finalization of the draft IDP</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Consolidation of draft district IDP</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•</li> </ul>
February 2014	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• First draft IDP</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Presentation of draft IDP to Rep Forum &amp; Steering Committee</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•</li> </ul>

Approval	March 2014	Adoption of draft IDP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Present draft IDP to council for adoption</li> <li>• Submit copies of approved IDP to MEC for Local Government</li> <li>• Submit copies of IDP to sector Departments</li> </ul>	•
	April 2014	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Publication of IDP &amp; related comments Stakeholder engagement.</li> <li>Engagements with Sector Departments</li> <li>• Inputs from sector departments</li> <li>• <b>Consultation with IDP Rep. Forum</b></li> <li>• Inputs and comments considered</li> <li>• IDP documents amended</li> <li>• Mayor tables IDP &amp; Budget for adoption</li> </ul>	<p>Conduct Public hearing on IDP</p> <p>IDP Analysis &amp; assessment by National &amp; Provincial Departments</p>	
Adoption of the Final IDP.	May 2014	Adoption of the Final IDP Review, (2013 - 2014)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adoption by Council</li> </ul>	
Submission of IDP to MEC. & other Sector Departments.	June 2014	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IDP sent to province within prescribed time after adoption by Council</li> <li>• Placement of a notice for the adoption of IDP</li> </ul>		



**CHAPTER 2**  
**SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS**

## Demographics

- The current population of the district area is estimated at 500994.
- Population growth in the District area has been slow at 0,48% since 2000, slightly higher than the Provincial growth rate of 0,39%.
- The population growth rate in the district area is expected to slow down more in the future, in line with the Provincial growth rate.
- The Metsimaholo area will continue to grow at a much higher rate than the rest of the district area.
- The rural nature of the area will lead to continued rural/urban migration patterns.
- The district contributes only 17,3% to the provincial population, while the Moqhaka area has the largest population of the four municipal areas, contributing 35,2% to the total district population.
- In terms of race, the black population and white population dominate the district population with contributions of 83,2% and 14,8% respectively.
- If compared to the province, the district has a lower youth population percentage, a higher working population percentage and a higher old age population percentage.
- The district has therefore a slightly older average population if compared to the province.
- The rural character of the district has contributed to the decline in the rural population mainly due to the decline in agricultural activities in the area. This situation could be turned around if rural development strategies could be implemented successfully. A main pillar of such a strategy is agricultural development.
- Family size/house hold size is an indication of economic development of an area and the level of quality of life. The district has an average house hold size of 3,2 persons compared to the Provincial average of 3,5 persons.
- Due to the rural nature of the district, population densities are relatively low, equal to that of the province. Metsimaholo area is an exception with substantially higher densities, including a more urban nature as the growth point of the district. Higher population densities usually allow for increased economic opportunities, but also for socio-economic issues and problems.
- Rural migration to urban areas has reached high levels and up to 80 % of the district population now resides in urban areas. The decline in the agricultural sector is the main contributor, while perceptions of rural people of more and better work opportunities also play a role.
- Disposable and available operational budget at the four municipalities within the district varies between R1083 per capita in Mafube to R2278 per capita in Metsimaholo.

This indicator provides a measure of level of development and infrastructure provision and maintenance as well as levels of service delivery.

### **Quality of life**

- HIV infection rates in South Africa are the highest in the world and have an impact on quality of life. In 2010 a total of 54 130 people (10,8%) of the people in the district were infected. The required medication needs to be provided on an ongoing basis in order to maintain quality of life.
- In terms of the Human Development Index (HDI), the district has an equal index to South Africa and a slightly better index if compared to the province.
- Huge inequalities, however, exists between the black and white populations with a HDI of 0,50 and 0,86 respectively in the district.
- The Metsimaholo area has the highest HDI of 0,63 and the Mafube area the lowest index of 0,47.
- The high levels of inequality need to be addressed by means of provision of quality services and economic opportunities close to communities.
- In terms of the Gini-coefficient, the district has a slightly better equality index if compared to the province, with the

Metsimaholo area with the highest levels of inequality in the district area.

### **Poverty**

- Poverty levels in the district have decreased since 2000 from 46% of people in poverty to 33,9% in 2010. These figures are, however, much better than that for the province at 39,7% in 2010.
- The Mafube area has the highest levels of poverty at 50,5% (2010).
- 39,5% of black people in the district are still living in poverty. This level of poverty is still very high and needs to be reduced by means of economic opportunities and rural development.
- The poverty gap in the district has increased from R208 000 000 in 2000 to R381 000 000 in 2010. It is especially in the Moqhaka and Ngwathe areas where the poverty gaps are substantial.

### **Education and Literacy**

- Education and literacy levels have significantly improved in the district from 2000 to 2010.
- In 2010, however, a total of 23 000 people older than 15 years had no schooling at all. The main problem areas are Ngwathe and Mafube.

- Education, adult education and skills training are important issues to be included in the strategy.
- Literacy rates are relatively low in the district at 74,4% in 2010. The average literacy rate in South Africa is 89,3% (2010).
- The Metsimaholo area has the highest literacy rate in the district at 80,8%, while the Mafube area has a literacy rate of only 59,7%.
- The literacy rate, in terms of adult education and skills training, needs to be accelerated.

#### **Housing and Infrastructure**

- The district wide housing backlog was estimated at 34 191 units in 2010. This figure contributes to 19,1 % of the provincial housing backlog.
- The Moqhaka area represents the largest housing backlog of 15 411 units in 2010.
- The housing backlog needs to be eradicated by 2016 by provision of a minimum of 10 000 units per year in the district.
- In terms of the combined infrastructure index, the district is better off if compared to the Province with indexes of 0,83 and 0,77 respectively.
- The Metsimaholo area has the highest levels of infrastructure development at 0,89 while the Mafube area has the lowest level of infrastructure development at 0,77.

- Infrastructure development allows for economic development. Infrastructure improvements need to be accelerated in order to ensure economic and rural development.

#### **Employment**

- Growth in unemployment has been low at 0,7 % in the district over the period from 2000-2010.
- The official unemployment rate in the district is 22,0% in 2010, compared to 28,7% in the Province.
- The Ngwathe area has the highest levels of unemployment at 31,9% in 2010.
- The unofficial unemployment rate is much higher, at approximately 40%. This will be confirmed in the community survey.
- Job opportunities in the informal sector are limited at only 23 280 jobs in 2010.
- The informal sector needs to contribute a much higher ratio of jobs if compared to the formal sector.
- A total of 96 000 formal jobs existed in 2010 in the district.
- In terms of formal jobs sectors in the district, the sectors of agriculture, manufacturing, community services and house-holds are the main contributors.
- Agriculture (primary sector) and manufacturing (secondary sector) have lost ground in terms of jobs created over the last 10 years.

- The focus should be on re-establishment and supporting the main job creation sectors in the local economy and support informal job creation efforts.

### **Income**

- In 2010, the employed population, 52 248 people received an income of less than R1500 per month, which is approximately 40% of the official working population. 60% of the working population received an income of more than R1500 per month.
- Income levels are still low in the district and improved technical skills and business skills could provide a solution.
- Buying power in the district is relatively low and the Moqhaka and Metsimaholo areas contributing up to 72% of the total district buying power in 2010.
- The average income for working people in the district is low at R 19 677 annually (2010).

### **Economic Indicators**

- Value added economic activities in the district contributed 28,9% to the total provincial value added economic activities.
- Value added activities and export create economic development and such activities must be supported and developed.

- As a rural area, agriculture must play a key role in development. The district has a total of 327 592ha (15,4% of all agricultural land in the province) of high potential agricultural land and 59% of agricultural land has low potential. Land needs to be optimally used for agriculture and food production. Only 4 317ha of land is irrigated land in the district.
- Provision of irrigation systems can assist in improving the agricultural sector production.
- The district economy in total is a nett exporter of goods and services, with an export/import ratio of 1:0,76.
- Export support and development is needed to improve the ratio even more.
- The GDP per capita in the district is at R89 572 much higher than that of the Province at R50 231 per capita in 2010.
- Growth rates of GDP for the district from 2000 to 2010 was 6,9%. The current growth rate is a low 1,4% in 2010.
- The Metsimaholo area dominates GDP in the district, with a GDP per capita at R203 903 in 2010.
- GDP growth needs to be accelerated, even in the midst of the global recession and the target should be 5% per annum growth.
- The district has a well developed local economy which has a Tress Index (Diversification Index) of 42,3 (with 0 equal to total diversification).

- Individual local municipal areas have less diverse economies.
- Economic diversification and formation of specialization clusters need to be promoted.
- The district has location advantages in sectors such as agriculture, mining, manufacturing and electricity provision.
- LED strategies need to focus on such sectors, but also on the focus areas of the NGP.

#### **Tourism**

- Tourism only contributes 3,1% to the GDP of the district in 2010. The industry needs to grow to levels as experienced in the province which has a contribution of 5,9% of GDP.
- Tourism in the district has been growing steadily at 3,4% per annum.
- As could be expected, the Ngwathe area has the highest levels of tourism at 9,7% of GDP, while the Metsimaholo area has only a 1,7% contribution to GDP.
- There is a potential for growth in the tourism sector and needs to be exploited, especially in terms of the domestic market.

#### **Crime**

- Crime rates have decreased from 2000 to 2008 by 1,9%. Crime rates are however extremely high if compared to global data. Violent crimes at 142 incidents per 100 000 of the population is high in global terms.
- The district had a lower crime index of 148 compared to the province of 157 in 2008.
- The area with the highest crime index is the Metsimaholo area with an index of 175, while the Mafube area had the lowest crime index of 103.
- Crime affects business and economic development negatively and needs to be reduced.

#### **Conclusion**

Population growth in the district has been low at between 0.4 to 0.6%, while economic growth has been slightly higher at 1.4%. This growth ratio needs to be strengthened.

## SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS ON ELECTRICITY PROVISION IN FDDM

Electricity provision to households:

Name of Local Municipality	Number of electricity connections on Proclaimed Stands.	Number of electricity connections on Un-Proclaimed Stands.	Total Number of electricity connections on All Stands
Moqhaka Municipality	22519		22519

### Number of Houses Electrified

Name of Local Municipality	Municipal Area (Rural / Ext or Suburb name)	Number of connections for previous financial year (1 Jul-30 Jun)	Number of connections for this financial year (1 Jul to date)
Moqhaka Municipality	Whole of Moqhaka excluding Zuma Park	16	35
Moqhaka Municipality	Zuma Park	17	14

### BACKLOG in terms of number of actual households on a Proclaimed or Un-proclaimed erven

Name of Local Municipality	Number of Backlogs on Proclaimed Erven.	Number of Backlogs on Un-proclaimed Erven.	Total Number of backlogs on All Erven.
Moqhaka Municipality	773	1306	2079

**FUTURE TOWNSHIP DEVELOPMENTS ( SUPPLY RESPONSIBILITY)**

<b>Municipal Area</b>	<b>Extension Name</b>	<b>Number of Stands to develop</b>	<b>Supply Authority (Mun/ Eskom)</b>	<b>New or Existing Supply Point</b>
MOQHAKA LM	Rammulotsi	4090	ESKOM	New
MOQHAKA LM	Maokeng	3931	Moqhaka	Existing
MOQHAKA LM	Kroonstad	239	Moqhaka	Existing
MOQHAKA LM	Rammulotsi	1044	Eskom	New
MOQHAKA LM	Matlwangtlwang	605	Eskom	New
MOQHAKA LM	Matlwangtlwang	831	Eskom	New

**Electricity provision to households**

<b>Name of Local Municipality</b>	<b>Number of electricity connections on Proclaimed Stands.</b>	<b>Number of electricity connections on Un-Proclaimed Stands.</b>	<b>Total Number of electricity connections on All Stands</b>
Ngwathe Municipality	16544		16544

**Backlog in terms of number of actual households on a Proclaimed or Un-proclaimed stands.**

<b>Name of Local Municipality</b>	<b>Number of Backlogs on Proclaimed Stands.</b>	<b>Number of Backlogs on Un-proclaimed Stands.</b>	<b>Total Number of backlogs on All Stands.</b>
Ngwathe Municipality	519	1350	1869

**FUTURE TOWNSHIP DEVELOPMENTS ( SUPPLY RESPONSIBILITY)**

<b>Municipal Area</b>	<b>Extension Name</b>	<b>Number of Stands to develop</b>	<b>Supply Authority (Mun/ Eskom)</b>	<b>New or Existing Supply Point</b>
NGWATHE LM	Phiritona	300	Ngwathe	New
NGWATHE LM	Phiritona	1000	Ngwathe	Existing
NGWATHE LM	Kwakwatsi	2800	Ngwathe	New

**ELECTRICITY BACKLOGS****Backlogs; in terms of number of actual households on a Proclaimed or Un-proclaimed erven.**

Name of Local Municipality	Number of Backlogs on <b>Proclaimed Erven</b>	Number of Backlogs on <b>Un-proclaimed Erven</b>	Total Number of Backlogs on <b>All Erven</b>
Mafube	1525	2000	3525

**FUTURE TOWNSHIP DEVELOPMENTS (SUPPLY RESPONSIBILITY)**

<b>Municipal Area</b>	<b>Extension Name</b>	<b>Number of Stands to Develop</b>	<b>Supply Authority (Mun/Eskom)</b>	<b>New or Existing supply point</b>
Namahadi		1509	Mun	Existing
Ntswanatsatsi		0	Mun	Existing
Mafahlaneng		0	Mun	Existing
Qalabotjha		16	Mun	Existing
Mafube LM	Frankfort; Villiers; Tweeling and Cornelia	2000	Mun	Future

**Electricity provision to households**

Name of Local Municipality	Number of Backlogs on <b>Proclaimed Erven</b>	Number of Backlogs on <b>Un-proclaimed Erven</b>	Total Number of Backlogs on <b>All Erven</b>
Metsimaholo Local Municipality	35000	N/A	35000

**Number of houses Electrified**

Name of Local Municipality	Municipal Area (Rural / Ext or Suburb name)	Number of connections for previous financial year (1 Jul- 30 Jun)	Number of connections for this financial year (1 Jul- 30 Jun)
	Total		
Metsimaholo Local Municipality	35000	454	None

**Backlog in terms of number of actual households on a proclaimed or un-proclaimed stands**

Name of Local Municipality	Number of Backlogs on <b>Proclaimed Erven</b>	Number of Backlogs on <b>Un-proclaimed Erven</b>	Total Number of Backlogs on <b>All Erven</b>
Metsimaholo Local Municipality	7000	N/A	7000

**FUTURE TOWNSHIP DEVELOPMENTS (SUPPLY RESPONSIBILITY)**

<b>Municipal Area</b>	<b>Extension Name</b>	<b>Number of Stands to Develop</b>	<b>Supply Authority (Mun/Eskom)</b>	<b>New or Existing supply point</b>
Metsimaholo Local Municipality	Amelia	3500	Mun	New
	Moidraai	2500	Mun	New
	Themba kubheka	3500	Mun	New
	Mooiplaats	3500	Mun	New

## WATER PROFILE IN FEZILE DABI

Since the post-apartheid government gained power in 1994 many new and progressive water policies, including the Water Services Act of 1997 and the National Water Act of 1998, have been hammered out to redress past inefficiencies, inequalities and environmental degradation. Management of water resources is now divided up amongst catchments, and each is recognized as needing a different approach.

Apart from ending the private ownership of the country's water resources which were very much in the possession of the whites, the National Water Act establishes a "basic needs reserve for humans", an allocation of water for everybody for drinking, food preparation and personal hygiene.

This reserve, provisionally targeted at 25 liters a person a day, is guaranteed as each citizen's right. After this, and after the environmental reserve is assured, the law requires that the remaining water be allocated so that all people all people have equitable access to the resource for productive purposes, especially within the agricultural sector and, of course, neighboring countries downstream of us. The Act makes all public property, repealing the

previous statute that assigned water rights based on property ownership. Landowners now need permission to make large sale water withdrawals from water that crosses their property.

**Availability of water is key to sustainable development in South Africa, and Fezile Dabi is not exempted from this imperative,**

**the community needs analysis that was conducted through mass public participation shows that water has to be a number one priority in the district .**

*"Water is a national resource, fundamental to life, growth and development.*

*Local government is charged with the constitutional responsibility to ensure service delivery. Water services authorities must therefore plan, ensure access to and regulate provision of water services themselves and or contract water service provider."*

## **WATER RESOURCES IN FEZILE DABI**

### Raw Water

- The Vaal River is the main source of raw water within the Fezile Dabi area, and provides raw water to the urban areas of Villiers, Parys, Vredefort (via a pipeline from an abstraction point near Parys), Viljoenskroon (via a pipeline from the Renoster River) Sasolburg Industries (Sasol1). Other secondary rivers that provide raw water include the Liebenbergsvlei River, Wilge River, Sand River, Blom River, Rhenoster River and Vals River.

### Surface Water

- Vaal Dam provides raw water directly to some of the towns in the district, such as Deneysville and Oranjeville. Raw water is also abstracted from the Uniefees Dam and a nearby fountain to provide bulk water to the residential areas of Heilbron and Sandersville. Bulk treated water is provided to Cornelia via a pipeline from the Frankfort purification works.

### Ground Water Sources

- Boreholes are used predominantly to provide water for household purposes in the rural areas. However, due to high operating costs, most of the towns have reduced their dependence on boreholes as a source of potable water.

### Rand Water

The Rand Water does act as a service provider to some of the local municipalities.

# GREEN DROP

## Metsimaholo

Has made progress at Sasolburg (low risk plant), the poor microbiological effluent compliance at Sasol is expected to improve now that the new chlorine dosing system has been installed.

Orangeville & Deneysville (Medium risk plant) the proposed installation of a flow meter at the plants in the next FY will allow the operating capacity to be monitored against the design capacity & facilitate a reduction in risk rating.

## Moqhaka

Waste water management treatments plants are now categorised as critical risk plants. Lack of information & design capacity & compliance of the final effluent render the management of the treatment process difficult to monitor & optimise reduction of risk of the rating difficult to achieve. Non compliance with R2834...

## Mafube

Waste water management treatments plants are now categorised as critical risk plants. The risk rating plants are rated at a maximum of 100% due to lack of basic information regarding the operating and design capacity.

no effluent compliance monitoring &

Non compliance with R2834 with regard to operating & maintenance of staff.

## Ngwathe

Waste water management treatments plants are now categorised as critical risk plants.

(Parameters) lack of influent monitoring , no effluent compliance monitoring &

Non compliance with R2834 with regard to operating & maintenance of staff

## BLUE DROP PROVINCIAL PERFORMANCE –LOG FREE STATE (BLUE DROP SCORE)

WATER SERVICE AUTHORITY (WSA)	PROVINCIAL BLUE DROP LOG POSITION	2012	2011	2010
Metsimaholo (+ Rand Water)	3	89.49	48.86	0
Moqhaka	11	59.93	21.76	0
Ngwathe (+ Rand Water)	16	20.59	45.37	25
Mafube	18	18.16	15.25	10.6

### COMMENTS: DWA

#### Most improved

**Metsimaholo** was acknowledged for the tremendous and consistent improvement in performance over the past 3years, the municipal score for this WSA increased from 0% in 2010 to 48.86 in 2011 and an impressive 89.49 in 2012.

#### Lowest Performer

**Mafube and Ngwathe** local municipalities were among the lowest performers in the district, these municipalities were found to be constantly performing below the desired standards and evidently have no defense mechanism against the host of risks posed to safe water supply, and serious attention is urgently required to remedy the situation.

However the department noted the effort from Mafube local municipality (WSA) to commence monitoring of drinking water quality in all the supply systems towards the end of 2011, hence the drinking quality data confirms that water in each of the supply system is safe for human consumption, the municipality is encouraged to maintain monitoring for twelve months

**Moqhaka**, overall the municipality showed improved performance in all three systems compared to previous evaluations. While DWA congratulates the municipality on the improved microbiological monitoring programmes, data submitted unfortunately again indicated that the water supplied to residents within the jurisdiction of the municipality posed a risk of infection. Continued residual chlorine failures indicate that the municipality has not yet addressed the ineffective disinfection procedures

### **SANITATION (FDDM ANALYSIS)**

The most urgent area for sanitation is access to basic safe sanitation structures. The sanitation backlog is for about 27875 household, i.e. about 13.5% of the population.

The largest backlog is present in the urban and farming settlements, this would mostly be addressed by VIP structures and secondary by upgrading existing structures. The upgrading possibility may be problematic due to a view that such a household insisting on a new facility (as it is their right to have access to this.

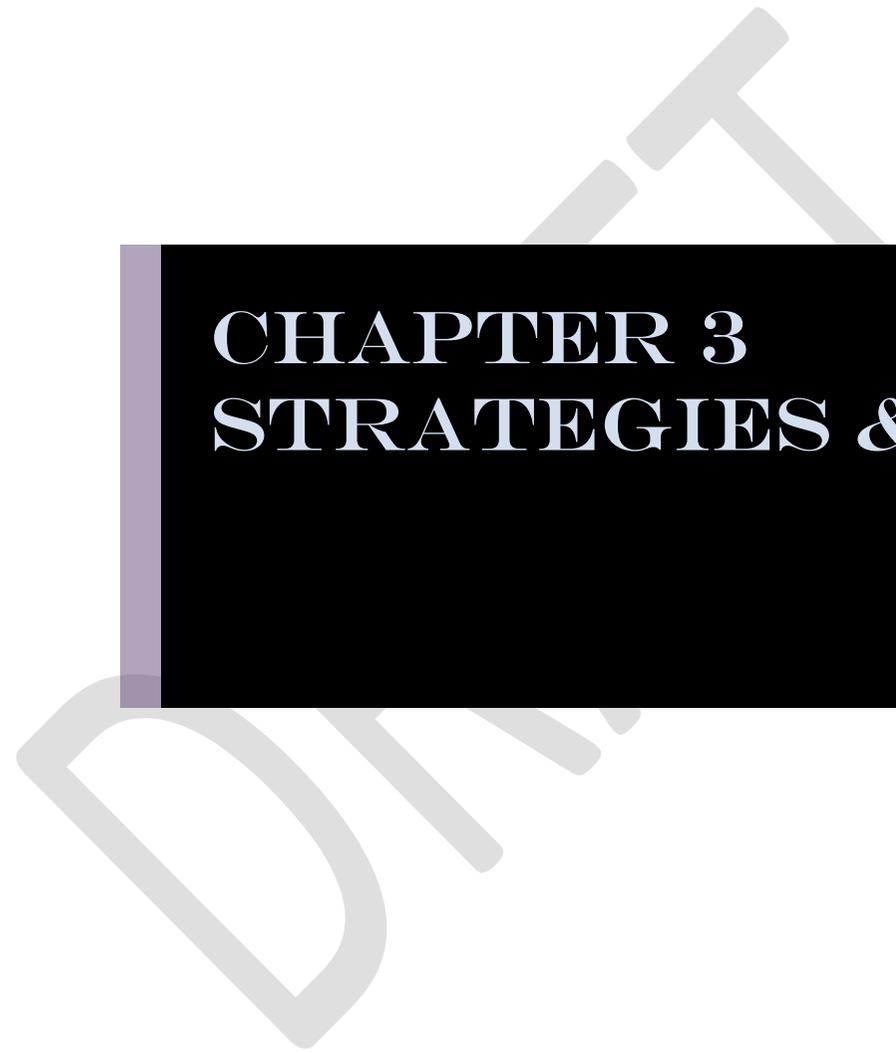
The district municipality is currently focusing on addressing backlogs for provision of basic service, but with a small but yearly budget. The extent of service delivery details on the sanitation supply type per settlement are table in the Municipal Turnaround Strategy.

*“The responsible and safe disposal of human waste helps to control the spread of disease.*

*Although there has been progress in the delivery of clean water, it is clear that there are lags in the delivery of sanitation facilities.*

*Many households in the district still have no access to adequate sanitation facilities*

*Source: Municipal Turnaround strategy.*



**CHAPTER 3**  
**STRATEGIES & OBJECTIVES**



To maintain sound labour relations	Effective implementation of recognized collective agreements, applicable legislation & policies	Healthy & conducive working environment	Compliance with Collective Agreements, Legislation & Policies						Workshops
	Collective bargaining with organized labour matters of mutual interest at local level.	Sound labour relations	Number of meetings						Functional Labour Forums

DRAFT

DRAFT

**Alignment with National Outcome: An efficient ,effective & development oriented public service & empowered, fair & inclusive citizenship**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Ensure appropriate skills base for growth and development (Driver 6)**

**IDP Objective: To support municipalities within the District with compliance on applicable legislation**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target					Project /Programme
				5 Yr Target	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	
To support municipalities within the District with compliance on applicable legislation	Institutional Assistance to local municipalities.	Effective & functional system	Number of projects						Assistance to local municipalities on contract management
	Regular sitting of District legal forum	Reduced litigation cases	Rate of reduction of cases						District legal forum
To create skills development opportunities for students & unemployed in the district	Create a database of students & unemployed with thin the district	Employable & marketable students in the district	Number of learnerships, internship & in-service training	80%					Capacity building of unemployed through learnerships, internships, bursaries & in-service training (subject to approval & funding by LGSETA & FDDM)
						11			Internships
				250	50	50	50	50	Learnerships

**Alignment with National Outcome 5: A skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Ensure appropriate skills base for growth and development (Driver 6)**

**IDP Objective: To create skills development opportunities for students & unemployed in the district**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	TARGET					Project /Programme
				5 Yr Target	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	
							16		Bursaries
			Number of learnerships provided Enabling economic environment	250 Unemployed learners	50 learners	50 learners	50 learners	50 learners	EMS learnerships

**Alignment with National Outcome: An efficient ,effective & development oriented public service & empowered, fair & inclusive citizenship**

**Alignment with FSGDS:  
Alignment with FSGDS: Foster good governance to create conducive climate for growth & development**

**IDP Objective:**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	TARGET					Project /Programme
				5 Yr Target	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	
	Ensure Service Level Agreements are concluded & signed	Responsive administration	Preparation of service level agreements	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	Service Level Agreements
	Compliance & adherence with occupational Health & Safety Act	No of incidents or injuries	Rate of safety (incidents & claims)	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	Implementation of Health & Safety Act
	The implementation of HRD strategy for short & medium term framework for current & future skills development tools in municipalities	Competent Employees & Councillors	No. of Employees & Councillors trained	80%	80%	80%	80%	80%	Training conducted as per WSP
	Adherence (awareness) to the code of conduct by staff members as per MSA	No elements of fraud , theft corruption & mismanagement of assets	Accountable administration & disciplined workforce	80%	80%	80%	80%	80%	Workshop with all FDDM Officials
To ensure effective & efficient administration	To ensure that performance standards are met by the service providers	Responsive administration	Submission of monitoring reports from service providers	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	Monitoring & measurement of performance of service providers in terms of the contract

**Alignment with National Outcome: An efficient ,effective & development oriented public service & empowered, fair & inclusive citizenship**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Foster good governance to create conducive climate for growth & development**

**IDP Objective: To render effective & efficient ICT services**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	TARGET						Project /Programme
				5 Yr Target	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
To render effective & efficient ICT services	All ICT systems are functional & available to Users	Secure IT environment	Secure user systems & applications	52 updates	12 (1 per month)	Implementation of effective & efficient security standards				
		Standardized specifications for both hardware & software	Number of hardware & software specifications	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	Development & upgrading hardware & software applications
				20 meetings	4 meetings	4 meetings	4 meetings	4 meetings	4 meetings	Convene ICT steering committee meetings
		Eliminate duplication of systems	No. of internal IT software audits	10	2 per annum	IT software audits				
		Alignment of ICT policies with legislation	Number of ICT reviewed policies enabling economic environment	20	At least 4 per annum	Review of policies & implementation of effective standards in line with policies				

DRAFT

**Alignment with National Outcome 9: Output 2: Improving Access to Basic Services**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Improved quality of life (Pillar 3)**

**IDP Objective: To support local municipalities with the provision of water & sanitation, roads & storm water & electricity**

**WATER & SANITATION**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	TARGET					Project /Programme
				5 Yr Target	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	
To support local municipalities with the provision of water and sanitation	Assist local municipalities financially, technically & administratively with the implementation of water & sanitation	Projects executed & completed on time	Projects completed	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	Bulk Provision of water & sanitation services as per Chapter 4 of projects on IDP.

**ROADS AND STORM WATER**

To support local municipalities with the provision of roads & storm water	Assist local municipalities financially, technically & administratively with the implementation of roads & storm water	Projects executed & completed on time	Projects completed	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	Provision of roads & storm water services as per Chapter 4 of projects on IDP.
---	--	---------------------------------------	--------------------	------	------	------	------	------	--

**ELECTRICITY**

To support local municipalities with the provision of electricity	Assist local municipalities financially, technically & administratively with the implementation of electricity	Projects executed & completed on time	Projects completed	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	Provision of electricity services as per Chapter 4 of projects on IDP.
---	--	---------------------------------------	--------------------	------	------	------	------	------	--

To better sports facilities infrastructure	Upgrading of sports facilities infrastructure	Projects executed & completed on time	Projects completed	80%	40%	20%	10%	10%	Upgrading of sports
--	---	---------------------------------------	--------------------	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	---------------------

DRAFT

**Alignment with National Outcome 8: Sustainable Human Settlement & improved quality of household life**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Build Sustainable Human Settlement ( Driver 8)**

**IDP Objective: TO PROMOTE SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENT**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>SPATIAL PLANNING</b>										
To fast track special economic & social integration	Development of SDF's for the district & local municipalities	Guidelines for schemes & spatial implications for plans	Districts & Local municipalities SDF's	5	1	1	2	1	1	Develop & Review of SDF's for the district & local municipalities
	Compliance with relevant planning laws, policies and standards	Administration of applications: By laws, policies & standards	Consistent & guided planning	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	Organizing training & workshops
	Protection of natural resources and unique areas / features	Avoided & mitigated negative environmental impacts	Applications received	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	Evaluation of applications received
	Evaluation of development applications	Comments for applications approval / non-approval	Number of application received & processed	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	Feedback to applicants
	Number of sites visit s on development applications									

**Alignment with National Outcome 8: Sustainable Human Settlement & improved quality of household life**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Build Sustainable Human Settlement ( Driver 8)**

**IDP Objective: TO PROMOTE SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENT**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>SPATIAL PLANNING</b>										
		Provision of personnel assistance to local municipalities	Provision of FDDM town planning personnel to assist local municipalities with projects.	Ongoing engagements with local municipalities	FDDM personnel offering technical assistance					

**Alignment with National Outcome 8: Sustainable Human Settlement & improved quality of household life**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Build Sustainable Human Settlement ( Driver 8)**

**IDP Objective:** To provide effective, efficient & sustainable GIS services to the District & Local Municipalities

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>GEOGRAPHIC INFORMATION SYSTEM</b>										
To provide effective, efficient, economic & sustainable GIS services to the District & Local Municipalities	Development & maintenance of spatial database for the District & Local Municipalities	Functional Corporate GIS	Updated GIS Website	25	5	5	5	5	5	Reliable data sourced from departments & other agents
	Dissemination of spatial information to all GIS	Availability of GIS data	Provision of Map-based information to GIS users	25	5	5	5	5	5	Map production
	Integrate corporate GIS with local municipalities	Infrastructure to connect with LM	Local Municipalities Connected to FDDM corporate GIS	20	4	4	4	4	4	

**Alignment with National Outcome 10: Environmental Assets & Natural Resources that are well protected & continually enhanced**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Integrate environmental concerns into growth & development planning**

**IDP Objective:** To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH &amp; EMERGENCY SERVICES</b>										
<b>FOOD CONTROL</b>										
To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District,	Evaluate all food premises	Compliant food premises	Number of certificate of acceptability issued	Ongoing	Ongoing	Ongoing	Ongoing	Ongoing	Ongoing	Evaluation of food premises
	Implement food sampling programme at relevant food premises	Food sampling programme implemented	Number of food sampling programmes undertaken	50 samples	10 Samples	10 Samples	10 Samples	10 Samples	10 Samples	Bacteriological sampling at food premises
	Implement health campaign on food safety	Food campaign undertaken	Number of food campaign undertaken	20	4 (1 per quarter)	Food Safety Campaigns				
	Investigate food poisoning cases	Food poisoning cases resolved	Number of food poisoning cases investigated	Ad hoc	Ad hoc	Ad hoc	Ad hoc	Ad hoc	Ad hoc	Investigations conducted

**Alignment with National Outcome 10: Environmental Assets & Natural Resources that are well protected & continually enhanced**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Integrate environmental concerns into growth & development planning**

**IDP Objective:** To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH &amp; EMERGENCY SERVICES</b>										
<b>WATER QUALITY MONITORING</b>										
To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District	Implement effective quality monitoring	Water samples complying with national legislation & SANS 241	Number of water samples complying with national legislation & SANS 241	Ongoing	Ongoing	Ongoing	Ongoing	Ongoing	Ongoing	Water quality monitoring
<b>DISPOSAL OF THE DEAD</b>										
	Ensure that activities & premises comply with regulations relating to handling of human remains	Compliant premises	Number of activities complaint with regulations	20	4 per annum	Regular inspection				
	Issue of certificates of competence according to regulations		Number of certificates of competence	As per application received	Issuing of certificates					

**Alignment with National Outcome 10: Environmental Assets & Natural Resources that are well protected & continually enhanced**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Integrate environmental concerns into growth & development planning**

**IDP Objective:** To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH &amp; EMERGENCY SERVICES</b>										
<b>SURVEILLANCE AND PREVENTION OF COMMUNICABLE DISEASE</b>										
To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District	Prevent the escalation of communicable disease	Reduction of communicable disease	Number of educational campaigns	As per reported cases	Educational Campaigns					
	To report communicable diseases	Reduction of communicable disease	Number of reported cases with regard to communicable disease received	As per reported cases	Investigated reported cases					
<b>HEALTH SURVEILLANCE OF PREMISES</b>										
	Participate in project development EHIA	To participate in all development projects as interested & affected parties (I & APs)	Number of projects developed & EIAs participated	Ad hoc	Participation during projects development					
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH MARKETING</b>										
	Implement local area awareness campaign on environmental health calendar	Informed local areas (communities)	Number of local awareness campaigns on environmental health days implemented per calendar year	20	4 (1 per quarter)	Awareness campaigns on environmental health days implemented				

**Alignment with National Outcome 10: Environmental Assets & Natural Resources that are well protected & continually enhanced**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Integrate environmental concerns into growth & development planning**

**IDP Objective:** To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET TO	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH &amp; EMERGENCY SERVICES</b>										
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT</b>										
To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District,	To assist local municipalities with updating Integrated Waste Management Plans (IWMPs)	Updated LMs IWMPs	Number of Updated IWMPs	20	4	4	4	4	4	Updating of Local Municipalities' IWMPs
	Phased - implementation of effective & sustainable waste management & greening project in the District	To develop a multi-purpose park in current public open spaces	Number of waste management & greening projects implemented	20	4	4	4	4	4	Adopt a park
	Conduct community environmental awareness & educational campaigns	Waste reduction	Number of awareness & educational campaigns conducted	20	4	4	4	4	4	Waste Management educational awareness campaigns
	Control disposal of Health Care Waste (HCW)	No illegal disposal of HCW by health care facilities	No. of monitoring reports regarding the disposal of health care waste by health care facilities	20	4	4	4	4	4	Inspections per local municipality

**Alignment with National Outcome 10: Environmental Assets & Natural Resources that are well protected & continually enhanced**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Integrate environmental concerns into growth & development planning**

**IDP Objective:** To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH &amp; EMERGENCY SERVICES</b>										
<b>AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT</b>										
To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District	Implement Air Quality Management Act	Compliance with NEMA	Number of AELs issued	20 AELs	4 AELs	Phased implementation of AQMP				
	Implement & promote community awareness campaigns & educational program to enhance public participation in environmental issues & other environmental health related programmes	Enhance public participation on environmental issues	Number of awareness campaigns & educational programmes	10	2	2	2	2	2	Awareness campaigns focusing on local communities

**Alignment with National Outcome 10: Environmental Assets & Natural Resources that are well protected & continually enhanced**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Integrate environmental concerns into growth & development planning**

**IDP Objective:** To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH &amp; EMERGENCY SERVICES</b>										
<b>CHEMICAL SAFETY</b>										
To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District,	Implement chemical safety programmes	Reduction in chemical poisoning incidents	Number of chemical poisoning incidents	10	2	2	2	2	2	Educational awareness programmes
	Promoting reporting cases regarding chemical poisoning	Accurate record keeping	Number of chemical poisoning cases received	60	12	12	12	12	12	Investigation / education on poisoning cases
	Implement proper end user education programmes at school on chemical safety	Well-informed learners	No. of lessons & programmes conducted	10	2	2	2	2	2	Education & awareness program

**Alignment with National Outcome 10: Environmental Assets & Natural Resources that are well protected & continually enhanced**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Integrate environmental concerns into growth & development planning**

**IDP Objective: To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH &amp; EMERGENCY SERVICES</b>										
<b>NOISE CONTROL</b>										
To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District	Law enforcement & compliance monitoring	Compliance with noise control regulations	Number of statutory notices issued	As and when required	Law enforcement & compliance monitoring					
<b>VECTOR CONTROL</b>										
	Facilitate, advise & educate on vector control	Informed community on vector infestation	Number of infestation cases reported	As and when required	Physical & chemical pests control					

**Alignment with National Outcome 10: Environmental Assets & Natural Resources that are well protected & continually enhanced**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Integrate environmental concerns into growth & development planning**

**IDP Objective:** To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH &amp; EMERGENCY SERVICES</b>										
<b>DISASTER MANAGEMENT</b>										
To ensure effective & efficient disaster management	Establish an effective disaster management centre	Effective Disaster Management Centre	Installed IMS	100%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	Operational Disaster Management Centre
			Emergency communication facility in place							
			Develop & review FOG(Field Operation Guide)							
	Develop & /review disaster plans	Effective response to disaster incidents	Clear documented updated disaster management risk assessments	2 Reviewed after every two years	1	-	1	-	-	Reviewed disaster management plans
										Disaster Management framework & contingency plans

**Alignment with National Outcome 10: Environmental Assets & Natural Resources that are well protected & continually enhanced**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Integrate environmental concerns into growth & development planning**

**IDP Objective:** To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH &amp; EMERGENCY SERVICES</b>										
<b>DISASTER MANAGEMENT</b>										
To ensure effective & efficient disaster management	Promote interdepartmental liaison, arrangements that must be put in place in order to enable all key internal role players In the administration of a Municipality to participate in disaster risk management activities and coordinate their disaster risk management	Regular meetings with relevant stakeholders	Number of meetings held	20 Meetings	4 Meetings	Interdepartmental disaster risk management committee				

**Alignment with National Outcome 10: Environmental Assets & Natural Resources that are well protected & continually enhanced**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Integrate environmental concerns into growth & development planning**

**IDP Objective: To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH &amp; EMERGENCY SERVICES</b>										
<b>DISASTER MANAGEMENT</b>										
To ensure effective & efficient disaster management	Promote integrated coordinated disaster management response through partnership between different stakeholder	Regular meetings with relevant stakeholders	Number of meetings held	20 Meetings	4 Meetings	4 Meetings	4 Meetings	4 Meetings	4 Meetings	Disaster Management advisory forum
				2 Reviewed after every two years	1	-	1	-	-	Reviewed disaster management plans
										Disaster Management framework & contingency plans

**Alignment with National Outcome 10: Environmental Assets & Natural Resources that are well protected & continually enhanced**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Integrate environmental concerns into growth & development planning**

**IDP Objective:** To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH &amp; EMERGENCY SERVICES</b>										
<b>DISASTER MANAGEMENT</b>										
To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District	Prevent the escalation of communicable disease	Reduction of communicable disease	Number of educational campaigns	As per reported cases	Educational Campaigns					
	To report communicable diseases	Reduction of communicable disease	Number of reported cases with regard to communicable disease received	As per reported cases	Investigated reported cases					
<b>HEALTH SURVEILLANCE OF PREMISES</b>										
	Participate in project development EHIA	To participate in all development projects as interested & affected parties (I & APs)	Number of projects developed & EIAs participated	Ad hoc	Participation during projects development					
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH MARKETING</b>										
	Implement local area awareness campaign on environmental health calendar	Informed local areas (communities)	Number of local awareness campaigns on environmental health days implemented per calendar year	20	4 (1 per quarter)	Awareness campaigns on environmental health days implemented				

**Alignment with National Outcome 10: Environmental Assets & Natural Resources that are well protected & continually enhanced**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Integrate environmental concerns into growth & development planning**

**IDP Objective:** To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH &amp; EMERGENCY SERVICES</b>										
<b>FIRE FIGHTING SERVICES</b>										
Planning Coordination & regulation fire services in the district	Coordinate fire fighting activities in the district	Effective provision of fire fighting services	Number of meetings held	20	4	4	4	4	4	Meetings of fire fighters forum
	Development of the fire fighting function	Capacitate fire fighting staff	Training of fire fighters conducted	10 trainings	2 trainings	2 trainings	2 trainings	2 trainings	2 trainings	Develop a programme for fire fighters
	Purchasing of vehicles, machinery, equipment and materials	Effective provision of fire fighting services	Fire fighting equipment purchased	10	2	2	2	2	2	Procurement of fire fighting equipment
Evolve institutional excellence through effective long range development planning	Responding to fire & rescue incidents	Delivery of operational fire & rescue service in the entire Mafube LM area complying with SANS 10090	Fire & rescue incidents responded to	As and when they occur	Fire & rescue Program					



**Alignment with National Outcome 10: Environmental Assets & Natural Resources that are well protected & continually enhanced**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Integrate environmental concerns into growth & development planning**

**IDP Objective:** To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively & equitably provided in the District

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH &amp; EMERGENCY SERVICES</b>										
<b>FIRE FIGHTING SERVICES</b>										
To ensure effective & efficient disaster management	Enhance public fire safety awareness	Educate learners & vulnerable members of community in the fire safety	Number of fire safety public awareness contact session conducted	20	4 (1 per quarter)	Educational fire awareness program				
		Trained Health Care staff members in the fire safety & evacuation procedures	Health Care Facility Staff members trained in the fire safety & evacuation procedures	100	20	20	20	20	20	
		Informed communities on fire safety	Number of public outreach events aimed at creating public awareness on fire	30	6	6	6	6	6	
	Enhance & maintain skills of fire rescue staff	Develop & document operating procedures for safe operational use of equipment	Number of standing operating procedures (SOPs) developed & documented	5 SOP	1 SOP	1 SOP	1SOP	1SOP	1SOP	Development of the Standing Operating Operational Procedure

**Alignment with National Outcome: A long and healthy life for all South Africans**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Pillar 3: Driver 10: Provide & improve adequate health care for citizens**

**IDP Objective: To contribute towards the reduction in the prevalence of HIV/AIDS in the district**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	
<b>HIV/AIDS</b>										
To contribute towards the reduction in the prevalence of HIV/AIDS in the district	Develop effective governance system	Compliance with the HIV/AIDS NSP (2007-2011)	No. of meetings held	10	2	2	2	2	2	Functional District Aids Council
	Develop high profile campaigns utilizing peer influence to promote HIV testing & disclosure	Informed communities	Number of awareness campaign held	5 Campaign	1 Campaign	1 Campaign	1 Campaign	1 Campaign	1 Campaign	Youth dialogues
				5 Campaign	1 Campaign	1 Campaign	1 Campaign	1 Campaign	1 Campaign	Men's dialogue & testing

**Alignment with National Outcome: A long and healthy life for all South Africans**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Pillar 3: Driver 10: Provide & improve adequate health care for citizens**

**IDP Objective: To contribute towards the reduction in the prevalence of HIV/AIDS in the district**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>HIV/AIDS</b>										
To contribute towards the reduction in the prevalence of HIV/AIDS in the district	Strengthen HIV prevention programme in schools	Informed learners within the district	Number of awareness campaigns	5 Campaign	1 Campaign	School awareness campaigns				
		Informed women within the district		5 Campaign	1 Campaign	Women's dialogue & testing				
	Ensure incremental roll-out of comprehensive customized HIV prevention package in prisons including access to HCT & condoms	Services rendered by in-mates	Number of awareness campaigns	All in mates within the district	In –mates HCT awareness campaigns					

DRAFT

**Alignment with National Outcome: A long and healthy life for all South Africans**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Pillar 3: Driver 10: Provide & improve adequate health care for citizens**

**IDP Objective: To contribute towards the reduction in the prevalence of HIV/AIDS in the district**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>HIV/AIDS</b>										
To contribute towards the reduction in the prevalence of HIV/AIDS in the district	Facilitation of HIV/AIDS in the workplace	Informed & compliant Employees with HIV/AIDS relevant policies & guidelines	Number of companies reached	50 Companies	10 Companies	10 Companies	10 Companies	10 Companies	10 Companies	South African Business Coalition on HIV& AIDS (SABCOHA)
	To ensure implementation of an integrated multi-sector plan at district level	A well coordinated World Aids Day	Number of communities reached	Halve of the population within the district	50% of community within the district	World Aids Day celebration				
	Strengthen support to POWA & attitude change	De-stigmatization of HIV/AIDS	Number of people reached							Candle light memorial & Red ribbon month celebration
	Mobilize resources for HIV/AIDS related matters	Resource mobilization for NGOs as per needs analysis	Number of NGOs benefited	70 NGOs /beneficiaries	14 NGOs /beneficiaries	14 NGOs /beneficiaries	14 NGOs /beneficiaries	14 NGOs /beneficiaries	14 NGOs /beneficiaries	FDDM HIV/AIDS benefit Jazz Festival

## KPA 3: LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

Alignment with National Outcome 4: Decent Employment through inclusive economic growth

Alignment with FSGDS: Integrate environmental concerns into growth & development planning

IDP Objective: To create an environment that stimulates local economic growth

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>										
To create an environment that stimulates local economic growth	Development & implementation of a tourism sector plan in collaboration with all stakeholders	Implementable sector plan and an investment portfolio	Facilitation of the development of tourism sector plan and an investment portfolio	1 tourism sector plan	Development of a tourism sector plan					
	Involve stakeholders in enhancing the local economy of the district and promote PPP	Active involvement of stakeholders	Number of district LED forum meetings	10	2 (1 per semester)	District LED Forum Meetings				
	Capacitate LED units in the local Municipalities by integrating all LED projects at district level	Capacitated & informed units at local municipalities	Number of interactive sessions with local Municipalities held	4	4	4	4	4	4	Capacitating local LED Units

Alignment with National Outcome 7: Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all.

Alignment with FSGDS: Alignment with FSGDS: Inclusive economic growth & sustainable job creation

IDP Objective: To support development of emerging farmers in the district

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	
<b>LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>AGRICULTURE</b>										
To support development of emerging farmers in the district	Identify opportunities in agro-processing of products	Profile agro-processing business opportunities	Number of awareness campaigns	1 agro-processing entity (Multi – Year Project)	Phase 2 of the Koppies greenhouse project					

**Alignment with National Outcome 7: Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all.**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Alignment with FSGDS: Inclusive economic growth & sustainable job creation**

**IDP Objective: To create an environment that stimulates local economic growth**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>SMMEs</b>										
To promote & enhance the SMME sector in the district	Facilitate job creation & access to business opportunities	Sustainable SMME sector	Number of SMMEs registered in the scheme	75	15 per annum	Entrepreneurial support				
		Link the SMMEs with supporting agencies	Number of SMMEs registered	As and when necessary	Link the SMMEs with supporting agencies					
		Identifying training & capacity needs in the SMME sector	The rate of identified capacity needs	20	4	4	4	4	4	Identifying training & capacity needs in the SMME sector
		Provision of support business corporative	-	20	4	4	4	4	4	Provision of support business corporative
		Provision of sustainable programme/ after care to SMMEs	No meetings with SMMEs	4	1 After Care Report					

**Alignment with National Outcome 7: Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all.**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Alignment with FSGDS: Inclusive economic growth & sustainable job creation**

**IDP Objective: To promote opportunities for increased inclusivity in the economy**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	
<b>LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT</b>										
To promote opportunities for increased inclusivity in the economy	To promote community development programs	Sustainable CBOs & self-help groups	Number of CBOs & self-help groups assisted	30	6	6	6	6	6	Provision of assistance to CBOs & self-help groups
	Develop food security programs	To improve food security for the poor & alleviate hunger	Number of sustainable food security programs	20	4	4	4	4	4	Development of security programmes

**Alignment with National Outcome 7: Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all.**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Inclusive economic growth & sustainable job creation**

**IDP Objective: To create an environment that stimulates local economic growth**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	
<b>LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT</b>										
To promote opportunities for increased inclusivity in the economy	Improvement of conditions at centres for vulnerable communities to facilitate support for the centres for vulnerable groups	Improved conditions At centres for vulnerable groups	Number of assisted centres	15	3	3	3	3	3	Assistance for centres for vulnerable groups
	Development of a community Development Plan	Well regulated distribution of intervention to communities	A community development plan	1 Community development plan	Development of a community development plan					

**Alignment with National Outcome 1: Improved quality of basic education**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Education innovation & skills development**

**IDP Objective: To facilitate Integrated Early Childhood Development service delivery**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	
<b>LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT</b>										
To facilitate Integrated Early Childhood Development service delivery	To improve the conditions of the early childhood development centres	Analysis report on ECDs	Number of needs analysis meetings conducted	5 reports	1report	1 report	1 report	1 report	1 report	Consultation session
	Provision of assistance to improve the conditions of early childhood development centres	Safe & resourced ECDs	Number of ECDs assisted	20	4	4	4	4	4	Capacity building programme & provision of ECD learning aids
	Development & updating of ECDs database	Updated ECDs database	Collection & consolidation of ECDs information from stakeholders	5 updated database	1 updated database	Creation of the ECDs database				



**Alignment with National Outcome 7: Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all.**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Driver 14: Maximize, Arts, Culture, Sports & recreation opportunities & prospects for all communities**

**IDP Objective: To nurture the development of people's potential through arts & culture**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme	
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017		
<b>LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>											
<b>COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT</b>											
To nurture the development of people's potential through arts & culture	Development of arts & crafts in the communities	Capacitated / skilled Artist & Crafters	Number of Artists assisted	30 Artists	6 Artists	3 year training programme for Artists					
			Number of crafters assisted	50 Crafters	10 Crafters	10 Crafters	10 Crafters	10 Crafters	10 Crafters	Financial assistance to identified performing groups	
	Regional performing arts development	Developed and resourced performing Artists	Number of groups to be assisted	30 performing groups	6 performing groups	Financial assistance to identified performing groups					

**Alignment with National Outcome 7: Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all.**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Driver 14: Maximize, Arts, Culture, Sports & recreation opportunities & prospects for all communities**

**IDP Objective: To plan, coordinate & support sports amongst the youth**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	
<b>LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>SPORTS</b>										
To plan, coordinate & support sports amongst the youth	To strengthen relations with Department of Sports, Arts & Culture for the implementation of sports development plan	Appropriately funded & coordinated sports programme	Development of sports programme	1 Sports Development Plan	-	-	1 Sports Development Plan	-	-	Implementation of sports programme & plans

**Alignment with National Outcome 7: Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all.**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Driver 14: Maximize, Arts, Culture, Sports & recreation opportunities & prospects for all communities**

**IDP Objective: To plan, coordinate & support sports amongst the youth**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>SPORTS</b>										
To plan, coordinate & support sports amongst the youth	Exposure of youth to new opportunities in sports	Youth participating in adventure sport & train selected youth	Number of activities coordinated	10 x adventure sports	2 x adventure sports	2 x adventure sports	2 x adventure sports	2 x adventure sports	2 x adventure sports	Development of youth in adventure sport
		Well coordinated OR Tambo games	To meet the prescriptions of OR Tambo games	5 x OR Tambo games	1 x OR Tambo games	To host or participate in OR Tambo games				
		Development of rural schools	Rural schools program	5 x rural sports program	1 x rural sports program	Sports development in rural areas				

**Alignment with National Outcome 7: Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all.**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Driver 5: Harness & increase tourism potential & opportunities**

**IDP Objective: To promote & develop the tourism sector in FDDM**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme	
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017		
<b>LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>											
<b>TOURISM</b>											
To promote & develop the tourism sector in FDDM	Develop a Tourism Sector plan in collaboration with all key stakeholders	Implementable sector plan	Facilitation of the development of tourism sector plan	1 tourism sector plan	-	-	1 tourism sector plan	-	-	Development of a tourism sector plan	
	Customer service awareness training	Good customer service in tourism industry (regional)	Number of awareness training's provided	5	1	1	1	1	1	Customer first	
	Promote high standard of product offering	Graded facilities	Number of establishment graded	25 B & Bs	5 B & Bs	5 B & Bs	5 B & Bs	5 B & Bs	5 B & Bs	5 B & Bs	Grading Facilities
			Provision of promotional material to assisted B & Bs	25 B & Bs	5 B & Bs	5 B & Bs	5 B & Bs	5 B & Bs	5 B & Bs	5 B & Bs	B & Bs having their own marketing material

Alignment with National Outcome 7: Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all.

Alignment with FSGDS: Driver 5: Harness & increase tourism potential & opportunities

IDP Objective: : To promote & develop the tourism sector in FDDM

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	
<b>LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>TOURISM</b>										
To promote & develop the tourism sector in FDDM	Adverting in selected publications	Information on district tourism offerings	Number of adverts placed	15 Adverts	3 Adverts	Marketing & Promotions				
	Installation of tourism signage	Adequate signage to facilities	Number of tourism signage installed	As per needs analysis	-	-	1 request from Metsimaholo	-	-	Installation of signage
	Promotional tourism shows	Increased number of visitors (Tourists)	Number of shows attended	10 x domestic shows & 5 x international show	2 x domestic shows & 1 x international show	2 x domestic shows & 1 x international show	2 x domestic shows & 1 x international show	2 x domestic shows & 1 x international show	2 x domestic shows & 1 x international show	Domestic & international shows

Alignment with National Outcome 7: Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all.

Alignment with FSGDS: Driver 5: Harness & increase tourism potential & opportunities

IDP Objective: : To promote & develop the tourism sector in FDDM

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	
<b>LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>TOURISM</b>										
To promote & develop the tourism sector in FDDM	Community participation in tourism initiatives	Effective community participation in tourism	Number of awareness campaigns with communities	20 x campaigns (5 x local municipality)	4 campaigns (1 x local municipality)	Awareness campaigns				
		Tourism product development	Number of tourism products developed	10 tourism products	2 tourism products	2 tourism products	2 tourism products	2 tourism products	2 tourism products	2 tourism products

Alignment with National Outcome 7: Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all.

Alignment with FSGDS: Driver 5: Harness & increase tourism potential & opportunities

IDP Objective: : To promote & develop the tourism sector in FDDM

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>TOURISM</b>										
To promote & develop the tourism sector in FDDM	Assistance & development of LTOs to enable them to drive tourism in local areas	Sustainable LTOs	Number of briefing sessions & contact meetings with LTOs	15 briefing sessions	3 briefing sessions	Consultation program with LTOs in the district				
			Provision of assistance & grants to LTOs for promotion & marketing of sustainable tourism	25 LTOs	5 LTOs	Provision of assistance to information offices operated & managed by LTOs				
	Upgrading of municipal resorts	Up lifted Standard & well serviced resort	Upgraded, enhanced & refurbished municipal resorts	3 resort	-	1 resort	1 resort	1 resort	-	Upgraded Municipal resort

## KPA 4: FINANCIAL VIABILITY AND MANAGEMENT

Alignment with National Outcome 9:Output 6: Administrative and Financial Viability										
Alignment with FSGDS: Foster good governance to create a conducive climate for growth and development										
IDP Objective: : To promote financial management services that enhance viability & compliance with the requirements of MFMA &other relevant legislations										
IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>FINANCIAL VIABILITY &amp; MANAGEMENT</b>				<b>5 Yr TARGET</b>	<b>2012/ 2013</b>	<b>2013/ 2014</b>	<b>2014/ 2015</b>	<b>2015/ 2016</b>	<b>2016/ 2017</b>	
To promote financial management services that enhance viability & compliance with the requirements of MFMA &other relevant legislations	Implementing sound management of budget to avoid irregular, unauthorized, fruitless & wasteful expenditure	Prudent financial management	Number of monthly reports submitted	55 reports	11 reports	11 reports	11 reports	11 reports	11 reports	Submission of monthly reports
	Compliance with GRAP standards & other applicable standards in preparation of financial statements	GRAP compliant Annual Financial Statements	100% compliance with GRAP	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	GRAP implementation

**Alignment with National Outcome 9:Output 6: Administrative and Financial Viability**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Foster good governance to create a conducive climate for growth and development**

**IDP Objective: : To promote financial management services that enhance viability & compliance with the requirements of MFMA & other relevant legislations**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>FINANCIAL VIABILITY &amp; MANAGEMENT</b>										
To promote financial management services that enhance viability & compliance with the requirements of MFMA & other relevant legislations	All Officials involved in the procurement processes sign SCM Code of Conduct	Corruption free environment	100% of SCM Officials & Bid Committee to sign a Code of Conduct	All SCM Officials & Bid Committee Members involved in SCM processes	All SCM Officials & Bid Committee Members involved in SCM processes	All SCM Officials & Bid Committee Members involved in SCM processes	All SCM Officials & Bid Committee Members involved in SCM processes	All SCM Officials & Bid Committee Members involved in SCM processes	All SCM Officials & Bid Committee Members involved in SCM processes	Signing of SCM Code of Conduct
			Updated gift register	All recipient of gift registers with value of above R350.00	All recipient of gift registers with value of above R350.00	All recipient of gift registers with value of above R350.00	All recipient of gift registers with value of above R350.00	All recipient of gift registers with value of above R350.00	All recipient of gift registers with value of above R350.00	Maintenance of gift register

**Alignment with National Outcome 9:Output 6: Administrative and Financial Viability**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Foster good governance to create a conducive climate for growth and development**

**IDP Objective: : To promote financial management services that enhance viability & compliance with the requirements of MFMA & other relevant legislations**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Program me
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>FINANCIAL VIABILITY &amp; MANAGEMENT</b>										
To promote financial management services that enhance viability & compliance with the requirements of MFMA & other relevant legislations	Review of financial policies & procedures	Improved internal controls	Review policies	15	3	3	3	3	3	Review of Organizational policies
				15	3	3	3	3	3	Review of legislated policies
	Compliance with the reporting requirements of MFMA Sec 71, 72 & SCM Regulations	Municipal Accountability	Number of reports submitted to relevant stakeholders	22 x Sec 71, (10 working days after month end) 1 x Sec 72(by 25 <sup>th</sup> January) 4 x SCM reports ( 30 days after the end of each quarter)	12 x Sec 71, (10 working days after month end) 1 x Sec 72(by 25 <sup>th</sup> January) 4 x SCM reports ( 30 days after the end of each quarter)	12 x Sec 71, (10 working days after month end) 1 x Sec 72(by 25 <sup>th</sup> January) 4 x SCM reports ( 30 days after the end of each quarter)	12 x Sec 71, (10 working days after month end) 1 x Sec 72(by 25 <sup>th</sup> January) 4 x SCM reports ( 30 days after the end of each quarter)	12 x Sec 71, (10 working days after month end) 1 x Sec 72(by 25 <sup>th</sup> January) 4 x SCM reports ( 30 days after the end of each quarter)	12 x Sec 71, (10 working days after month end) 1 x Sec 72(by 25 <sup>th</sup> January) 4 x SCM reports ( 30 days after the end of each quarter)	12 x Sec 71, (10 working days after month end) 1 x Sec 72(by 25 <sup>th</sup> January) 4 x SCM reports ( 30 days after the end of each quarter)

**Alignment with National Outcome 9:Output 6: Administrative and Financial Viability**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Foster good governance to create a conducive climate for growth and development**

**IDP Objective: : To promote financial management services that enhance viability & compliance with the requirements of MFMA & other relevant legislations**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>FINANCIAL VIABILITY &amp; MANAGEMENT</b>										
To promote financial management services that enhance viability & compliance with the requirements of MFMA & other relevant legislations	Creditors are paid within stipulated timeframes	No interest on late payments	Interest paid	Payments within 30 days	Payments of Creditors as they fall due					
	Timely procurement of quality goods & services	Value for money / procurement within stipulated timeframes	Procurement of goods & services should be in line with stipulated timeframes	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	Procurement of goods & services
	Financial Planning is aligned with DoRA (ES, MSIG, etc)	Credible & funded budget	Credible budgeting	Refer Budget Process Plan	Budget Preparation					

**Alignment with National Outcome 9:Output 6: Administrative and Financial Viability**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Foster good governance to create a conducive climate for growth and development**

**IDP Objective: : To promote financial management services that enhance viability & compliance with the requirements of MFMA &other relevant legislations**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>FINANCIAL VIABILITY &amp; MANAGEMENT</b>										
To promote financial management services that enhance viability & compliance with the requirements of MFMA &other relevant legislations	Compliance with Supply Chain Management policies & regulations	Transparent & fair supply chain management practices	Number of non compliant transactions	0	0	0	0	0	0	Procurement of goods & services
To account, safeguard, maintain & repair assets of the municipality	Maintaining the municipal asset register	GRAP compliant asset register	Number of assets count	5	1	1	1	1	1	Updating of the assets register/ inventory – Assets count
	Fully insuring municipal assets	Cover against damage & unexpected loss	Safeguarding of municipal assets	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	Short-term insurance

**Alignment with National Outcome 9:Output 6: Administrative and Financial Viability**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Foster good governance to create a conducive climate for growth and development**

**IDP Objective: : To promote financial management services that enhance viability & compliance with the requirements of MFMA & other relevant legislations**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>FINANCIAL VIABILITY &amp; MANAGEMENT</b>										
To provide technical & financial assistance to local municipalities	Provision of hands on support to local municipalities	Capacity building & financial support	Number of municipal visits	50	10	10	10	10	10	Financial supports & technical support provision
				4 local municipalities	Provide advice on action plans & internal controls					
				100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	
To comply with all the requirements of Grants	Division of Revenue (DoRA), e.g. MSIG, FMG, EPWP & Rural Road Maintenance Programme	Improved accountability	Number of reports per Grant submitted (20 working days after the end of the month)	60	12	12	12	12	12	Submission of Grant reports

**KPA 5: GOOD GOVERNANCE & PUBLIC PARTICIPATION**

**Alignment with National Outcome 9:Output 1: Implement a differentiated approach to municipal financing, planning & support**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Foster good governance to create a conducive climate for growth and development**

**IDP Objective: To ensure development / review of credible IDPs in the district & local municipalities**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Program me
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLANNING</b>				<b>5 Yr TARGET</b>	<b>2012/ 2013</b>	<b>2013/ 2014</b>	<b>2014/ 2015</b>	<b>2015/ 2016</b>	<b>2016/ 2017</b>	
To ensure development / review of credible IDPs in the district & local municipalities	Development & compliance / adherence to the IDP framework & Process Plans	Aligned IDP processes	Number of engagements with stakeholders	20	4 (1 per quarter)	District IDP Managers Forum				
				20 x IDP Public Participation (1 per municipality)	4 x IDP Public Participation (1 per municipality)	4 x IDP Public Participation (1 per municipality)	4 x IDP Public Participation (1 per municipality)	4 x IDP Public Participation (1 per municipality)	4 x IDP Public Participation (1 per municipality)	IDP Public Participation
				5 x IDP Steering Committee Meeting	1 x IDP Steering Committee Meeting	1 x IDP Steering Committee Meeting	1 x IDP Steering Committee Meeting	1 x IDP Steering Committee Meeting	1 x IDP Steering Committee Meeting	IDP Steering Committee Meeting
				5 x IDP Representative Forum	1 x IDP Representative Forum	1 x IDP Representative Forum	1 x IDP Representative Forum	1 x IDP Representative Forum	1 x IDP Representative Forum	IDP Representative Forum



Alignment with National Outcome 9:Output 1: Implement a differentiated approach to municipal financing, planning & support

Alignment with FSGDS: Foster good governance to create a conducive climate for growth and development

IDP Objective: To support & ensure the implementation of Performance Management System

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM</b>										
To support & ensure the implementation of the Performance Management System	Timely adoption of & implantation of the Service Delivery & Budget Implementation Plan	Alignment of IDP, Budget & SDBIP	100% alignment of IDP , Budget & SDBIP	Aligned SDBIP	Aligned SDBIP	Aligned SDBIP	Aligned SDBIP	Aligned SDBIP	Aligned SDBIP	Alignment of performance of plans to IDP & SDBIP
	Auditing of reported performance information	Audited performance information	Number of performance performance internal audit reports	20 reports	4 reports	4 reports	4 reports	4 reports	4 reports	Internal Performance

**Alignment with National Outcome 9:Output 1: Implement a differentiated approach to municipal financing, planning & support**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Foster good governance to create a conducive climate for growth and development**

**IDP Objective: To provide information through ICT & to improve the corporate image of the municipality**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>ICT &amp; COMMUNICATIONS</b>				<b>5 Yr TARGET</b>	<b>2012/ 2013</b>	<b>2013/ 2014</b>	<b>2014/ 2015</b>	<b>2015/ 2016</b>	<b>2016/ 2017</b>	
To provide information through ICT and to improve the corporate image of the municipality	The district web-site is updated regularly	Up –to-date website	Number of updates	4 per week (4 x 48 x 5)	4 per week (4 x 48)	Updating website				
To promote effective communication & coordination of communication structures	Production of informative Fezile Dabi News that covers news in four local municipalities in Fezile Dabi	Access to municipal news by communities all the time.	Number of issues published	15 issues	3 issues	3 issues	3 issues	3 issues	3 issues	Fezile Dabi News
	Assist with establishment of local Communicator 's Forum	Adopted program of action for the District Communicators forum	Number of meetings held, & Number of programs	20	4 (1 per quarter)	Monthly meetings of local communicators forum				

**Alignment with National Outcome 9:Output 1: Implement a differentiated approach to municipal financing, planning & support**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Foster good governance to create a conducive climate for growth and development**

**IDP Objective: To promote effective communication & coordination of communication structures**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	
<b>COMMUNICATIONS</b>				<b>5 Yr TARGET</b>	<b>2012/2013</b>	<b>2013/2014</b>	<b>2014/2015</b>	<b>2015/2016</b>	<b>2016/2017</b>	
To promote effective communication & coordination of communication structures	Dedicated Service Delivery Talk on Community commercial radio, regular advertorial with print media, news paper inserts phamleetering	Informed communities about municipal programme of action	Number of radio slots	50 slots	10 slots	10 slots	10 slots	10 slots	10 slots	Radio & Print media productions
	Conduct development through research & interview, & monthly updates of website consistently	Professional & informative website	Number of monthly updates	60 Updates	12 Updates	12 Updates	12 Updates	12 Updates	12 Updates	Website content management

Alignment with National Outcome 9: Output 1: Implement a differentiated approach to municipal financing, planning & support

Alignment with FSGDS: Foster good governance to create a conducive climate for growth and development

IDP Objective: To promote effective communication & coordination of communication structures

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	
<b>COMMUNICATIONS</b>										
To promote effective communication & coordination of communication structures	Monthly meetings & joint planning of municipal programmes for the district, joint media tours, media briefings, pamphlets, posters establishment of the district interactive SMS line	Properly coordinated communication & rapid response to media inquiries for the four local municipalities	Number of joint programs	As an when necessary	Proactive media management system for the district & communication coordination					

Alignment with National Outcome12: An efficient, effective & development oriented public service & empowered , fair & inclusive citizenship

Alignment with FSGDS: Foster good governance to create a conducive climate for growth and development

IDP Objective: To support & capacitate Councillors, Ward committee & Community Development workers in enhancing local government

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>PUBLIC PARTICIPATION</b>										
To support & capacitate Councillors, Ward committee & Community Development workers in enhancing local government	Regular workshops & training with the view of capacity building	Effective public participation efforts	Number of workshops conducted	20 Workshops & reports	4 Workshops & reports	Outreach programme to communities				
				20	4	4	4	4	4	Speaker's imbizo
				5	1	1	1	1	1	Ward Committee Conference/ Indaba
				20	4	4	4	4	4	District Manager's Forum
				2	2	2	2	2	2	Public / Civic education /hearing
				5	1	1	1	1	1	District CDW conference

Alignment with National Outcome12: An efficient, effective & development oriented public service & empowered , fair & inclusive citizenship

Alignment with FSGDS: Foster good governance to create a conducive climate for growth and development

IDP Objective: To support & capacitate Councillors, Ward committee & Community Development workers in enhancing local government

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>PUBLIC PARTICIPATION</b>										
To support & capacitate Councillors, Ward committee & Community Development workers in enhancing local government	Regular workshops & training with the view of capacity building	Effective public participation efforts	Number of workshops conducted	20 Workshops & reports	4 Workshops & reports	Outreach programme to communities				
				5	1	1	1	1	1	Imvuselelo campaign
				Ongoing	Ongoing	Ongoing	Ongoing	Ongoing	Ongoing	Back to school campaigns & know your rights
				5	1	1	1	1	1	Stakeholder summit
				5	1	1	1	1	1	Workshop for Councillors

**Alignment with National Outcome12: An efficient, effective & development oriented public service & empowered , fair & inclusive citizenship**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Foster good governance to create a conducive climate for growth and development**

**IDP Objective: To promote effective communication & be responsive to the needs of the community**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	
<b>PUBLIC PARTICIPATION</b>				<b>5 Yr TARGET</b>	<b>2012/2013</b>	<b>2013/2014</b>	<b>2014/2015</b>	<b>2015/2016</b>	<b>2016/2017</b>	
To promote effective communication & responsive to the needs of the community	Regular communication between the Office of the Speaker, Councillors, Ward Committees & CDWs	Improved & functional relationship between the Office of the Speaker, Councillors, Ward Committees & CDWs	Number of meetings of Councillors, Ward Committees & CDWs	20	4	4	4	4	4	DPPOs Steering Committee meetings /workshops
To strengthen a meaningful community participation & interaction programme	Mobilization of communities for budget & IDP campaigns	Effective public participation, credible budget & IDP Processes	Improved attendance of communities to campaign	20	4	4	4	4	4	Public participation interaction program

**Alignment with National Outcome12: An efficient, effective & development oriented public service & empowered , fair & inclusive citizenship**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Pillar 6: Foster good governance to create a conducive climate for growth and development**

**IDP Objective: To promote effective communication & be responsive to the needs of the community**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	
<b>PUBLIC PARTICIPATION</b>										
To strengthen a meaningful community participation & interaction program	Regular meetings for all stakeholders i.e. Civics, NGOs, CBOs & Ward Committees on government programme	Improved & functional relationship between the structures	Number of meetings held	20	4	4	4	4	4	Needs assessment
To enhance public awareness & civic education	Regular holding of education workshops on legislation related matters	Public awareness	Number of education workshops	20	4	4	4	4	4	Public education workshops

**Alignment with National Outcome1: Improved quality of basic education**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Pillar 2: Driver 6: Ensure an appropriate skills base for growth & development**

**IDP Objective: To encourage culture of learning & have students registered with tertiary institutions**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>EDUCATION</b>				<b>5 Yr TARGET</b>	<b>2012/ 2013</b>	<b>2013/ 2014</b>	<b>2014/ 2015</b>	<b>2015/ 2016</b>	<b>2016/ 2017</b>	
To encourage culture of learning & have students registered with tertiary institutions	Give financial assistance to needy Learners who have not been able to get bursaries for their tertiary studies	Attract & enroll Grade 12 Learners who qualify for admission at tertiary institutions so they can register to study at tertiary institutions	Number of black students who register at tertiary institutions & ultimately obtain formal qualifications to go into the job market	1 000 students whose parents are unemployed or earn less than R 5000. 00.	200 students whose parents are unemployed or earn less than R 5000. 00.	200 students whose parents are unemployed or earn less than R 5000. 00.	200 students whose parents are unemployed or earn less than R 5000. 00.	200 students whose parents are unemployed or earn less than R 5000. 00.	200 students whose parents are unemployed or earn less than R 5000. 00.	Tertiary funding
	Give full bursaries to needy Learners who have obtained an aggregate of C symbol & not have been able to get bursaries for studies in tertiary institutions			40 students with minimum C symbol per year, whose parents are unemployed or earn less than R 5000. 00.	8 students with minimum C symbol per year, whose parents are unemployed or earn less than R 5000. 00.	8 students with minimum C symbol per year, whose parents are unemployed or earn less than R 5000. 00.	8 students with minimum C symbol per year, whose parents are unemployed or earn less than R 5000. 00.	8 students with minimum C symbol per year, whose parents are unemployed or earn less than R 5000. 00.	8 students with minimum C symbol per year, whose parents are unemployed or earn less than R 5000. 00.	8 students with minimum C symbol per year, whose parents are unemployed or earn less than R 5000. 00.



**Alignment with National Outcome11: Create a better South Africa & contribute to a to a better & safer Africa & World**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Dreiver11: Ensure social development & social security services for all citizens**

**IDP Objective: To promote & restore ethical behavior & societal values & principles enshrined in the country's constitution**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	
<b>SPORTS, ARTS &amp; CULTURE</b>				<b>5 Yr TARGET</b>	<b>2012/2013</b>	<b>2013/2014</b>	<b>2014/2015</b>	<b>2015/2016</b>	<b>2016/2017</b>	
To promote & restore ethical behavior & societal values & principles enshrined in the country's constitution	Identify community leaders to be skilled	Equipped identified leaders with necessary skills to impart the knowledge to the communities	Number skilled community leaders	500 Community leaders	100 Community leaders	Moral regeneration				
To celebrate our historical heritage	Form a task team with officials from all local Municipalities	Awareness campaign held	Better understanding of our heritage & our rich history	5 Campaigns	1 Campaign	Proudly South African campaign				

**Alignment with National Outcome11: Create a better South Africa & contribute to a to a better & safer Africa & World**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Driver11: Ensure social development & social security services for all citizens**

**IDP Objective: To promote & restore ethical behavior & societal values & principles enshrined in the country's constitution**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>YOUTH DEVELOPMENT</b>				<b>5 Yr TARGET</b>	<b>2012/ 2013</b>	<b>2013/ 2014</b>	<b>2014/ 2015</b>	<b>2015/ 2016</b>	<b>2016/ 2017</b>	
To provide opportunities to business owned by young people (functional & dysfunctional businesses)	Facilitate exhibitions ( presentations, stalls, & motivational speakers)	Empowered young Entrepreneurs	Number of businesses	600 youth owned businesses & cooperatives	120 youth owned businesses & cooperatives	Youth Enterprise & Cooperatives Indaba				
To inform Learners about opportunities after Grade 12	Facilitated exhibition (presentation/s talks/motivational speaking	Well-informed Learners about career choices	Number of learners	All Grade 9, 11 & 12 Learners in Fezile Dabi schools	All Grade 9, 11 & 12 Learners in Fezile Dabi schools	All Grade 9, 11 & 12 Learners in Fezile Dabi schools	All Grade 9, 11 & 12 Learners in Fezile Dabi schools	All Grade 9, 11 & 12 Learners in Fezile Dabi schools	All Grade 9, 11 & 12 Learners in Fezile Dabi schools	School career exhibition
To encourage young people to take part in the new struggle for socio-economic freedom	Form a task team in preparation for the event and conduct memorial lectures as a build- up to the event	Young people who are aware of their role in the project of nation building	Youth month celebration	5 youth month celebration	1 youth month celebration	Youth month commemorations (June 16)				

**Alignment with National Outcome11: Create a better South Africa & contribute to a to a better & safer Africa & World**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Driver11: Ensure social development & social security services for all citizens**

**IDP Objective: To promote & restore ethical behavior & societal values & principles enshrined in the country's constitution**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>YOUTH DEVELOPMENT</b>				<b>5 Yr TARGET</b>	<b>2012/ 2013</b>	<b>2013/ 2014</b>	<b>2014/ 2015</b>	<b>2015/ 2016</b>	<b>2016/ 2017</b>	
To encourage young Artists to be self-sustaining	Facilitated workshop by government departments and private sectors	Self-sufficient young Artists	Number of workshops conducted	5 workshop	1 workshop	1 workshop	1 workshop	1 workshop	1 workshop	Workshops for young Artists
To encourage positive youth participation in community life (themed youth establishment i.e. Sport orientated, each town must have a debating club	Dissemination of information through public participation meeting	Informed youth	Number of launch meeting held	5 Launch meeting	1 Launch meeting	1 Launch meeting	1 Launch meeting	1 Launch meeting	1 Launch meeting	Launch of youth clubs for all townships
Continuous benchmarking and improvement of youth units in the district	Forum meetings	Effective engagement on Youth matters	Number of meetings held	10 Meetings	2 meetings	YDO forum meetings				

Alignment with National Outcome11: Create a better South Africa & contribute to a to a better & safer Africa & World

Alignment with FSGDS: Driver11: Ensure social development & social security services for all citizens

IDP Objective: To promote & restore ethical behavior & societal values & principles enshrined in the country's constitution

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>YOUTH DEVELOPMENT</b>										
Discussion on local government issues by young people in the district	Public participation in governance	Council meetings	Number of meetings held	10 Meetings	2 meetings	Youth Council meetings				

Alignment with National Outcome11: Create a better South Africa & contribute to a to a better & safer Africa & World

Alignment with FSGDS: Driver11: Ensure social development & social security services for all citizens

IDP Objective: To promote & restore ethical behavior & societal values & principles enshrined in the country's constitution

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>SPECIAL PROGRAMMES</b>				<b>5 Yr TARGET</b>	<b>2012/ 2013</b>	<b>2013/ 2014</b>	<b>2014/ 2015</b>	<b>2015/ 2016</b>	<b>2016/ 2017</b>	
To recognize the role played by women	Empower women in different sectors	Emancipation of women	Number of women participating in mainstream economy	5 workshop	1 workshop	1 workshop	1 workshop	1 workshop	1 workshop	50/50 women empowerment programme
To educate communities about National Gender Frameworks, gender-based violence policy, relevant legislation and gender equality	Involve relevant stakeholders	Informed communities and participation of men	Reduction of gender based violence cases reported	5 meeting	1 meeting	1 meeting	1 meeting	1 meeting	1 meeting	Men's dialogue
	Empower women on their rights & the rights to their inheritance	Support by relevant departments & proper implementation of legislation & constitution	Number of conference held on non-interference of families	5 Conference	1 conference	1 conference	1 conference	1 conference	1 conference	Widow & widowhood conference

Alignment with National Outcome11: Create a better South Africa & contribute to a to a better & safer Africa & World

Alignment with FSGDS: Driver11: Ensure social development & social security services for all citizens

IDP Objective: To promote & restore ethical behavior & societal values & principles enshrined in the country's constitution

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>SPECIAL PROGRAMMES</b>				<b>5 Yr TARGET</b>	<b>2012/ 2013</b>	<b>2013/ 2014</b>	<b>2014/ 2015</b>	<b>2015/ 2016</b>	<b>2016/ 2017</b>	
To educate communities about National Gender Frameworks, gender-based violence policy, relevant legislation and gender equality	To develop women in rural areas	Support by government departments	Number of conferences/summits held	5 workshop	1 workshop	1 workshop	1 workshop	1 workshop	1 workshop	Rural women empowerment summit
	Motivate and recognize the contribution of women in the institution	Compliance with policies and implementation of Batho Pele Principles		5 meeting	1 meeting	1 meeting	1 meeting	1 meeting	1 meeting	Motivational talk

**Alignment with National Outcome11: Create a better South Africa & contribute to a to a better & safer Africa & World**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Driver11: Ensure social development & social security services for all citizens**

**IDP Objective: To promote & restore ethical behavior & societal values & principles enshrined in the country's constitution**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>DISABILITY</b>				<b>5 Yr TARGET</b>	<b>2012/ 2013</b>	<b>2013/ 2014</b>	<b>2014/ 2015</b>	<b>2015/ 2016</b>	<b>2016/ 2017</b>	
To encourage mobility and independency in the disabled community	Hand-over event	Independence of mobility for disabled people	Number of local Municipalities assisted	5 workshop	1 workshop	1 workshop	1 workshop	1 workshop	1 workshop	Assistive device project
To empower disabled women to actively participate in various activities	Presentations by various sector departments on available opportunities for women with disabilities	Empowered young women with disabilities	Number of presentations by various departments	5 meeting	1 meeting	1 meeting	1 meeting	1 meeting	1 meeting	Disabled women empowerment seminar
To keep NGOs and community informed of issues that affect them	Facilitation of disability forum meetings	Civil society engagement with government	Number of disability forum meetings	10 meetings	2 meetings	Disability forum meetings				
To bring awareness to society about different types of disability	Awareness campaigns	Informed community about different disability types	Number of awareness campaigns conducted	5 meeting	1 meeting	1 meeting	1 meeting	1 meeting	1 meeting	Awareness campaigns conducted

**Alignment with National Outcome11: Create a better South Africa & contribute to a to a better & safer Africa & World**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Driver11: Ensure social development & social security services for all citizens**

**IDP Objective: To promote & facilitate Intergovernmental Relations amongst Stakeholders**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/2013	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	
<b>MUNICIPAL MANAGER</b>										
To promote and facilitate Intergovernmental Relations amongst stakeholders	Facilitation of Intergovernmental Relations	Coherent governance and effective provision of services	Number of meetings held	10 meetings	2 meetings	District Coordination Forum (DCF)				
				20 meetings	4 meetings	Municipal Manager Forum				
				10 meeting	2 meetings	Local Economic Development Forum				
				10 meeting	2 meetings	Chief Financial Officers Forum				
				20 meetings	4 meetings	Communicators Forum				
				20 meetings	4 meetings	Technical Managers Forum				
				20 meetings	4 meetings	Cooperate Support Services				
				20 meetings	4 meetings	Disaster Management Forum				

**Alignment with National Outcome11: Create a better South Africa & contribute to a to a better & safer Africa & World**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Dreiver11: Ensure social development & social security services for all citizens**

**IDP Objective: To promote & facilitate Intergovernmental Relations amongst Stakeholders**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>MUNICIPAL MANAGER</b>				<b>5 Yr TARGET</b>	<b>2012/ 2013</b>	<b>2013/ 2014</b>	<b>2014/ 2015</b>	<b>2015/ 2016</b>	<b>2016/ 2017</b>	
To give feedback/ assistance and provide reasonable assurance regarding effectiveness of internal controls	Implementation of audit action plan	Improved audit reports	Number of internal audit reports	10 meetings	2 meetings	Internal Audit reports				
To provide oversight on the affairs of the Municipality	Regular meetings of the Audit committee/ performance committee	Audit committee/ performance reports submitted to Council	Number of meetings held	20 meetings	4 meetings	Audit committee/ performance committee meetings				
	Meetings of Oversight committee	Oversight reports to Council	Number of meetings held	20 meetings	4 meetings	Oversight Committee				
To ensure proper risk management, anti-corruption strategies and plans	Implementation of risk management policy, plan and strategy	Updated risk register	Reduction of high risk levels to tolerable levels	5 reports	1 report	Risk Management				

**Alignment with National Outcome11: Create a better South Africa & contribute to a to a better & safer Africa & World**

**Alignment with FSGDS: Driver11: Ensure social development & social security services for all citizens**

**IDP Objective: To promote & facilitate Intergovernmental Relations amongst Stakeholders**

IDP Goal/Objective	Strategies	Key Performance Outcome	Key Performance Indicator	Target						Project /Programme
				5 Yr TARGET	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2014/ 2015	2015/ 2016	2016/ 2017	
<b>MUNICIPAL MANAGER</b>				<b>5 Yr TARGET</b>	<b>2012/ 2013</b>	<b>2013/ 2014</b>	<b>2014/ 2015</b>	<b>2015/ 2016</b>	<b>2016/ 2017</b>	
To ensure proper risk management, anti-corruption strategies and plans	Conduct risk assessments to ensure that risks facing the organization are identified	Updated risk register	Reduction of high risk levels to tolerable levels	10 meetings	2 meetings	2 meetings	2 meetings	2 meetings	2 meetings	Risk Assessment
	Implementation of anti-corruption strategy, plan and policy	Environment that is free of fraud and corruption	Number of traceable and reported incidents	100% of the incidents reported be investigated and be handed over to appropriate bodies	100% of the incidents reported be investigated and be handed over to appropriate bodies	100% of the incidents reported be investigated and be handed over to appropriate bodies	100% of the incidents reported be investigated and be handed over to appropriate bodies	100% of the incidents reported be investigated and be handed over to appropriate bodies	100% of the incidents reported be investigated and be handed over to appropriate bodies	Investigation of reported incidents
	To conduct anti-corruption awareness campaigns	Environment that is free of fraud and corruption	Environment that is free of fraud and corruption	5 Workshop	1 Workshop	Workshops				
To build a risk conscious culture within the organization	Training of Employees and embedding of risk management into day-to-day operations	Informed Employees	Number of workshops conducted	5 Workshop	1 Workshop	1 Workshop	1 Workshop	Workshop	1 Workshop	Workshop

# CHAPTER 4

# PROJECTS

DRAFT

DRAFT

**MAFUBE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY PROJECTS:**

DRAFT

MIG Reference No	Project Description	EPWP Y/N	Project Value	MIG Value	Expenditure as at 30 June 2012	Expenditure Balance as at 30 June 2012	Planned MIG Expenditure for 2012/2013	Status (Not Registered, Registered, Design & Tender, Construction, Completed)
	PMU 2012/2013	N	1 292 050.00	1 292 050.00	-	1 292 050.00	1 292 050.00	Operational
MIG/FS0093/W/05/06	Villiers: Weir in the Vaal River	N	10 260 000.00	10 260 000.00		10 260 000.00	726 104.53	Registered/VIP
MIG/FS/0346/S/06/07	Cornelia/Ntswanatsatsi Bucket Eradication	Y	6 588 366.66	6 588 366.66	6 387 465.69	200 900.97	141 425.21	Construction
MIG/FS0503/W/08/09	Villiers: Water Purification Plant	N	20 757 690.00	19 593 978.00	17 543 549.73	2 050 428.27	355 849.57	Construction
MIG/FS0504/R,ST/09/10	Qalabotjha: Upgrading of Gravel Roads to Paved Roads	Y	5 470 016.40	5 470 016.40	-	-	-	Registered/Bokhoma Mpa
MIG/FS0505/R,ST/09/10	Namahadi: Roads & Stormwater Drainage Upgrading	Y	12 793 262.40	12 793 262.40	253 532.63	12 539 729.77	4 003 000.00	Registered/Bokhoma Mpa
MIG/FS0506/R,ST/09/10	Mafahlaneng: Roads & Stormwater Drainage Upgrading	Y	7 315 849.68	7 315 849.68	5 350 251.52	1 965 598.16	1 383 172.00	Construction/Bokhoma Mpa
MIG/FS0502/R,ST/09/10	Ntswanatsatsi: Upgrading of Gravel Roads to Paved Roads	Y	5 739 033.60	5 739 033.60	-	-	-	Registered/Bokhoma Mpa
MIG/FS0671/R,ST/10/11	Namahadi-Phahameng: Upgrading of Gravel Roads to Paved Roads	Y	18 730 200.00	16 430 000.00	11 091 122.65	5 338 877.35	335 474.78	Construction/Tamarron
MIG/FS0721/W/09/11	Namahadi : Water Reticulation Network and Installation of 1714 Erf Connections - Phase 3: Erf Connections	Y	21 325 745.00	21 325 745.16	14 252 007.00	7 073 738.16	4 914 488.97	Construction/Kudjo
MIG/FS0760/S/09/10	Qalabotjha: Construction of the Extension of Wastewater Treatment Works	N	19 950 549.48	19 950 549.48	-	19 950 549.48	9 615 539.47	Registered/VIP Koena
	Qalabotjha/Villiers: Construction of a New 6.5ML Water Reservoir	N	11 257 956.00	11 257 956.00		11 257 956.00		Not Registered/VIP Koena

	Upgrade of Mafahlaneng Sports Facilities	Y	1 600 000.00	1 600 000.00		1 600 000.00	1 600 000.00	Nnt Registered
	Upgrade of Kgatholoha Sports Facilities	Y	2 200 000.00	2 200 000.00		2 200 000.00	2 200 000.00	Nnt Registered
	<b>Sport</b>							
	TOTALS		141 806 552.23	127 607 953.48	18 189 932.65	109 418 020.83	26 567 104.53	

DRAFT

MIG Reference No	Project Description	EPWP Y/N	Project Value	MIG Value	KPA	WARD	BENEFICIARIES	Status (Not Registered, Registered, Design & Tender, Construction, Completed)
	PMU 2013/2014	N	1 366 300.00	1 366 300.00	Operational	All	All	Operational
MIG/FS0093/W/05/06	Villiers: Weir in the Vaal River	N	10 260 000.00	10 260 000.00	Water	3,4,9	All	Registered
MIG/FS0504/R,ST/09/10	Qalabotjha: Upgrading of Gravel Roads to Paved Roads	Y	5 603 040.08	5 603 040.08	Roads & Stormwater Drains	4,9	All	Registered
MIG/FS0505/R,ST/09/10	Namahadi: Roads & Stormwater Drainage Upgrading	Y	12 793 262.40	12 793 262.40	Roads & Stormwater Drains	6	All	Construction
MIG/FS0502/R,ST/09/10	Ntswanatsatsi: Upgrading of Gravel Roads to Paved Roads	Y	5 034 240.00	5 034 240.00	Roads & Stormwater Drains	1	All	Registered
MIG/FS0721/W/09/11	Namahadi : Water Reticulation Network and Installation of 1714 Erf Connections	Y	21 325 745.00	21 325 745.16	Water	7	All	Construction
MIG/FS0760/S/09/10	Qalabotjha: Construction of the Extension of Wastewater Treatment Works	N	19 950 549.48	19 950 549.48	Sanitation	3,4,9	All	Registered
	Qalabotjha/Villiers: Construction of a New 6.5ML Water Reservoir	N	11 257 956.00	11 257 956.00	Water	3,4,9	All	Not Registered
	Upgrade of Mafahlaneng Sports Stadium	Y	1 600 000.00	1 600 000.00	Sport	8	All	Not Registered
	Upgrade of Kgathologa Sports Ground	Y	2 200 000.00	2 200 000.00	Sport	6	All	Not Registered
	Sport( Namahadi: Zomba Stadium)	Y	4 088 850.00	4 088 850.00	Sport	6	All	Not Registered
	Sport( Namahadi: Zomba Stadium/Ntswanatsatsi Sports Ground Upgrade)	Y	4 325 250.00	4 325 250.00	Sport	1,6	All	Not Registered

DWA	Namahadi/Frankfort WWTP Upgrade	N	105 000 000.00	105 000 000.00	Sanitation	2,5,6,7	All	
DoE	805 Namahadi Household Connections	N	13 050 000.00	13 050 000.00	Electricity	7	All	
DoE	Upgrade of Frankfort Substation	N	6 000 000.00	6 000 000.00	Electricity	2,7	All	
TOTALS			223 855 192.96	223 855 193.12				

DRAFT

# **NGWATHE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY PROJECTS:**

DRAFT

MIG Reference Nr	Project Description	EP WP Y/N	Project Value	MIG Value (excl VAT)	Expenditure as at 30 June 2012	Balance as at 30 June 2012	Planned MIG Expenditure for 2012/2013	Status (Not Registered, Registered, Design & Tender, Construction, Completed)	Planned date: Consultant to be appointed (start with design)	Planned date: er to be advertised	Planned date: Contract or to be appointe d and construc tion to start	Planne d date: Project to be comple ted
MIG/15/4/1/3/1/1	Ngwathe PMU: 2012/2013	N	2 522 050.00	2 522 050.00	-	2 522 050.00	2 522 050.00	Functional	-	-	-	-
MIG/FS0623/S/08/10	Heilbron: Upgrading of sewer treatment works (ID-158007)	N	56 430 000.00	49 500 000.00	21 182 498.88	28 317 501.12	8 000 000.00	Construction	3 September 2007 (Multi-year)	30 July 2009	15 February 2010	28 February 2013
MIG/FS0714/W/09/09	Parys: Refurbishment and upgrading of Water Treatment Works Phase 3 (MIS:171059)	N	31 895 731.00	28 895 732.00	1 463 976.02	27 431 755.98	8 093 020.00	Tender Stage	23 August 2006 (Multi-year)	27 November 2012	30 January 2013	30 September 2013
MIG/FS0624/S/08/10	Parys: Upgrading of sewer treatment works	N	85 500 000.00	75 000 000.00	11 533 831.02	63 466 168.98	24 000 000.00	Construction	3 September 2007 (Multi-year)	14 May 2012	02 July 2012	28 June 2014
NOT YET REGISTERED	Water and sewer connection in Mokwalo section, Vredefort 1625 houses	Y	34 452 964.35	34 452 964.35	-	34 452 964.35	-	Business Plans Submitted	15 April 2013	10 June 2013	05 August 2013	31 January 2014
NOT ALLOCATED YET	Paving of internal roads in Koppies 1km.	Y	6 558 951.35	6 558 951.35	-	6 558 951.35	-	Registered	28 February 2013	15 March 2013	15 July 2013	13 December 2013
NOT ALLOCATED YET	Paving of internal roads in Edenville 1km.	Y	6 558 951.35	6 558 951.35	-	6 558 951.35	-	Registered	28 February 2013	15 March 2013	15 July 2013	13 December 2013

NOT YET REGISTERED	Upgrade of low level bridge in Mandela Section, Tumahole	N	2 500 000.00	2 500 000.00	-	2 500 000.00	-	Business Plans Submitted	28 February 2013	15 March 2013	15 July 2013	c29 November 2013
NOT YET REGISTERED	Installation of bulk water meters in Heilbron	Y	2 500 000.00	2 500 000.00	-	2 500 000.00	-	Business Plans Submitted	28 February 2013	15 March 2013	15 July 2013	15 November 2013
AWAITING MIG NO.	Refurbishment of the tennis court in Koppies.	N	1 000 000.00	1 000 000.00	-	1 000 000.00	1 000 000.00	Tender Stage	-	07 November 2012	18 February 2013	30 April 2013
AWAITING MIG NO.	Fencing of the Munmec sports facility	N	825 930.00	825 930.00	-	825 930.00	825 930.00	Tender Stage	-	07 November 2012	18 February 2013	30 March 2013
AWAITING MIG NO.	Refurbishment of the Schonkenville sports complex	N	3 000 000.00	3 000 000.00	-	3 000 000.00	3 000 000.00	Tender Stage	31 January 2013	07 November 2012	11 March 2013	30 June 2013
AWAITING MIG NO.	Construction of the Heilbron sports facilities	N	3 000 000.00	3 000 000.00	-	3 000 000.00	3 000 000.00	Tender Stage	31 January 2013	07 November 2012	11 March 2013	30 June 2013
NOT YET REGISTERED	Upgrading of sports facilities in Ngwathe	N		-	-	-	-	Not yet registered	-	-	-	-
	<b>Total</b>		236 744 578.05	216 314 579.05	34 180 305.92	182 134 273.13	50 441 000.00					
AWAITING MIG NO.	Fencing of the Munmec sports facility	N	825 930.00	825 930.00	-	825 930.00	825 930.00	Tender Stage	-	07 November 2012	18 February 2013	30 March 2013

# **MOQHAKA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY PROJECTS:**

DRAFT

MIG Reference Nr	Project Description	EPWP Y/N	Project Value	MIG Value	Expenditure as on 30 June 2013	Expenditure Balance as on 30 June 2013	Planned MIG Expenditure for 2013/2014	Planned MIG Expenditure for 2014/2015
PMU	PMU		1 497 637.00	1 497 637.00	-	-	1 613 702.00	
MIG/FS0436/R,ST/09/11	Moqhaka: The Upgrading of Demane Street in Constantia	Y	2 735 857.00	2 735 857.00	2 599 064.00	136 793.00	136 793.00	-
MIG/FS0437/R,ST/10/12	Moqhaka: Marabastad - Upgrading of 11th Avennnue Road	Y	5 190 892.75	2 640 000.00	-	2 640 000.00	2 508 000.00	132 000.00
MIG/FS0547/R,ST/11/13	Moqhaka: Matlwangtlwang - Construction of internal roads 288 to 1289 and storm water drainage	Y	19 428 152.72	19 428 153.00	15 288 908.60	4 139 244.40	3 167 836.40	971 408.00
MIG/FS/0644/S/08/11	Moqhaka: Installation of sewer for 4000 new erven in Rammulotsi (northleigh)	N	36 000 000.00	20 608 000.00	9 827 626.09	10 780 373.91	-	8 000 000.00
MIG/FS0659/R,ST/10/12	Moqhaka: Northleigh - Ablution Block and Internal Road for Cemetery	Y	12 510 000.00	12 510 000.00	11 810 000.00	700 000.00	700 000.00	
MIG/FS0660/CL/10/12	Moqhaka: Installation of High Mast Lights in Moqhaka	N	3 366 833.00	3 366 833.00	3 198 455.96	168 377.04	168 341.00	
MIG/FS/0689/R,ST/09/11	Moqhaka: Construction of Vehicle Crossings in Maokeng	Y	3 420 000.00	3 420 000.00	2 794 528.21	625 471.79	625 471.79	-
MIG/FS0725/ST/09/11	Moqhaka: Demane Street - The Provision of Proper Storm Water Drainage System	Y	2 478 390.00	2 174 026.00	2 065 324.00	108 702.00	108 702.00	
MIG/FS0731/R,ST/10/12	Moqhaka: Hleli Street - Upgrading of gravel road and provision of proper stormwater system in Constantia	Y	2 880 000.00	2 880 000.00	956 499.94	1 923 500.06	1 779 500.00	144 000.06
MIG/FS0733/R,ST/10/12	Moqhaka:Lebina Street - Upgrading of gravel road and provision of proper storm water drainage in Phomolong	Y	3 120 000.00	3 120 000.00	158 711.51	2 961 288.49	2 805 288.49	156 000.00

MIG/FS0734/R,ST/10/12	Moqhaka: Matlwangtlwang: Upgrading of Internal road and providing of storm water system	Y	2 880 000.00	2 880 000.00	110 451.00	2 769 549.00	2 631 071.55	138 477.45
MIG/FS0736/R,ST/10/12	Moqhaka: Matlwangtlwang: Upgrading of bus route and access road	Y	10 000 000.00	10 000 000.00	832 690.50	9 167 309.50	4 173 874.57	4 993 434.93
MIG/FS0737/R,ST/10/12	Moqhaka: Morake Street - Upgrading of Gravel Road in Seeisoville	N	3 595 536.00	3 595 536.00	211 103.00	3 384 433.00	3 204 656.20	179 776.80
MIG/FS0738/R,ST/10/12	Moqhaka: Stilfontein Cemetery: Palisade Fencing and Roads	Y	8 480 000.00	8 480 000.00	1 296 654.09	7 183 345.91	-	7 183 345.91
MIG/FS0762/W/09/11	Moqhaka: Rehabilitation and Upgrading of Water Purification Plants in Kroonstad, Viljoenskroon & Steynsrus	N	9 368 909.00	9 368 909.00	8 160 854.79	1 208 054.21	739 609.00	468 445.21
MIG/FS0768/R,ST/10/11	Moqhaka: Rammulotsi - Erf 4942 to Northleigh - Upgrading of area link	Y	6 144 000.00	6 144 000.00	-	6 144 000.00	5 836 800.00	307 200.00
MIG/FS0786/R,ST/11/12	Gelukwaarts 2578 - 2163 Upgrading of connector road	Y	4 960 000.00	4 960 000.00	-	4 960 000.00	4 712 000.00	248 000.00
MIG/FS0787/R,ST/11/12	Gelukwaarts 2897 - 1495 - Connector Road and Provision of Proper Storm Water (1.05km)	Y	3 255 000.00	3 255 000.00	-	3 255 000.00	3 092 250.00	162 750.00
	Moqhaka: Upgrading of Matlwangtlwang Sports Grounds	Y	957 326.00		909 460.00	-	47 866.00	
	Moqhaka: Phomolong Central sports Terrain	Y	5 732 181.00		5 445 272.00	-	286 609.00	
	Rammulotsi - New Landfill Site Phase 2	Y	4 942 569.00				4 695 441.00	247 128.00
	Rammulotsi Multi Sports centre	Y	4 894 578.00				4 649 849.00	244 729.00
	Upgrading of Brentpark Stadium	Y	1 881 409.00				1 787 339.00	94 070.00
	Kroonstad - Investigation of new Landfill site	N	1 050 000.00				-	997 500.00
	Northleigh - Installation of High mast Lights - Phase 1 (14 Lights)	N	3 321 108.00				-	3 155 053.00

# **METSIMAHOLO LOCAL MUNICIPALITY**

DRAFT

<b>Project description</b>	<b>Budget</b>	<b>MIG/Municipal Budget</b>	<b>Shortfall</b>	<b>12/13 Allocation</b>	<b>12/13 Expenditure</b>	<b>12/13 Balance</b>	<b>Total Expenditure to August 2012</b>	<b>Total Balance of project</b>	<b>12/13 Financial Progress %</b>	<b>Total Financial Progress %</b>	<b>Total Physical Progress %</b>
PMU Establishment	2 355 900.00	2 355 900.00	0.00	2 355 900.00	117 831.58	2 238 068.42	221 908.17	2 133 991.83	5	9	
<b>Amelia:</b> Sewer Network+ Pump Station (3257 Stands)	37 183 826.35	37 183 826.35	0.00	16 455 618.75	5 206 016.61	11 249 602.14	12 444 618.45	24 739 207.90	32	33	48
Augmentation of bulk water and upgrading of water purification plant for 6500 erven	37 506 000.00	37 506 000.00	0.00	14 377 634.75	2 029 263.17	12 348 371.58	16 922 366.94	20 583 633.06	14	45	48
Metsimaholo: (Phase 01) Construction of New Interlocking Paved Roads and Storm Water Drainage System for 7.4km	35 883 275.65	35 883 275.65	0.00	6 928 846.88	2 213 805.33	4 715 041.55	31 143 470.74	4 739 804.91	32	87	75
Bulk Supply Substation 88/11KV - DoE	46 000 000.00	13 500 000.00	32 500 000.00	10 000 000.00	0.00	10 000 000.00	15 177 515.24	30 822 484.76	0	33	47

# FEZILE DABI DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

DRAFT

Project description	Budget	11/12 & 12/13 Allocation	Expenditure to date retention included	Balance of project allocation	Financial Progress %	Physical Progress %	Comments
Mafube: Upgrading of outfall sewer in Namahadi Ext 23 (Mamello, Frankfort)	R 3 201 000.00	R 3 201 000.00					Complete
RAMUTSA RAIL	R 2 791 655.87		R 2 791 655.87				
VIP CONSULTANTS	R 442 871.50		R 442 871.50				
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>R 3 234 527.37</b>		<b>R 3 234 527.37</b>	<b>R -33 527.37</b>	100	100	
Frankfort fire station (EHS department)	R 2 370 134.85	R 2 370 134.85					Busy construction-behind schedule
MTHEMVU MVELASE CIVIL PROJECTS	R 1 986 280.06		R 1 192 648.84				
SIMON'S & LEE ARCHITECTS	R 432 417.68		R 466 861.90				
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>R 2 418 697.74</b>		<b>R 1 659 510.74</b>	<b>R 710 624.11</b>	69	53	
Relebohile Clinic in Heilbron	R 23 123 631.58	R 23 123 631.58					Busy construction-behind schedule
ENM TRADING	R 18 002 974.67		R 17 176 106.22				
PHENOMENAL ARCHI-TACT'S	R 5 120 656.91		R 5 120 656.91				
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>R 23 123 631.58</b>		<b>R 22 296 763.13</b>	<b>R 826 868.45</b>	96	93	
DSAC Fezile Dabi Stadium	R 100 000 000.00	R 100 000 000.00					Busy construction
NMC CONSTRUCTION & ANQUET FRIEDSHELF	R 85 339 357.00		R 73 661 055.75				
PHENOMENAL ARCHI-TACT'S	R 19 000 000.00		R 18 523 663.24				
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>R 104 339 357.00</b>		<b>R 92 184 718.99</b>	<b>R 7 815 281.01</b>	88	82	

Metsimaholo Hospital	R 25 475 164.88	R 25 475 164.88				
SIZAMPILO PROJECTS	R 21 578 114.98		R 19 927 971.40			
MAZIBUKO WESSELS ARCHITECTS	R 4 316 685.56		R 4 380 549.62			
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>R 25 894 800.54</b>		<b>R 24 308 521.02</b>	<b>R 1 166 643.86</b>	94	85
EPWP - Tumahole storm water canals	R 4 611 000.00	R 3 611 000.00				
INFRACONSULTANT ENGINEERING	R 275 265.26		R 275 265.26			
CONSTRUCTION COST	R 3 790 523.86		R 3 790 523.86			
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>R 4 065 789.12</b>		<b>R 4 065 789.12</b>	<b>R -454 789.12</b>	100	100
Rehabilitation of streets in Ngwathe CONTRACTOR TO BE APPOINTED	R 3 525 000.00 R 3 074 946.00	R 3 525 000.00	R -			
MOLPROCON CONSULTING (PTY) LTD	R 450 054.00					
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>R 3 525 000.00</b>		<b>R -</b>	<b>R 3 525 000.00</b>	0	0
Laboratory - Sasolburg	R 9 008 669.00	R 1 000 000.00				
ARCHI-M STUDIO CC CONTRACTOR TO BE APPOINTED NEXT YEAR	R 616 284.44		R 616 284.44			
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>R 616 284.44</b>		<b>R 616 284.44</b>	<b>R 383 715.56</b>	100	62
Electrification of stands in Edenville	R 3 500 000.00	R 3 500 000.00				
TENDERS RECEIVED NO APPOINTMENT MADE TO DATE	R 3 500 000.00		R 6 594.00			
	R -					
	<b>R 3 500 000.00</b>		<b>R 6 594.00</b>	<b>R 3 493 406.00</b>	0	0

<b>TOTAL</b>							
Provision of Electricity for Farm workers houses	R 100 000.00	R 100 000.00					
FARMERS VARIOUS CONTRACTORS	R 100 000.00		R 72 000.00				
	R -						
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>R 100 000.00</b>		<b>R 72 000.00</b>	<b>R 28 000.00</b>	72	72	Ongoing. As and when application is received.
Qalabotjha Stadium	R 3 800 000.00	R 3 800 000.00					
TO BE APPOINTED	R 3 220 338.98						
URBAN EDGE ARCHITECTS	R 579 661.02		R 12 500.00				
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>R 3 800 000.00</b>		<b>R 12 500.00</b>	<b>R 3 787 500.00</b>	0	0	
Refurbishment of Electrical Network in Vredefort	R 1 000 000.00	R 1 000 000.00					
IMMEDIATE ELECTRICAL	R 954 372.76		R 954 372.76				
LYON & PARTNERS	R 30 000.00		R 30 000.00				
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>R 984 372.76</b>		<b>R 984 372.76</b>	<b>R 15 627.24</b>	100	100	M
Sewer Yard connections in Gortin for 2400 erven	R 3 000 000.00	R 3 000 000.00	R -		0	0	

DRAFT

# CHAPTER 5

## MUNICIPAL TURN- AROUND STRATEGY

DRAFT

DRAFT

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
1.1	Access to water	a) <b>The level of basic service delivery in terms of the Municipality's target</b> (the number of households in municipality with access and percenta	<p><b>NGWATHE</b> Backlogs in Ngwathe: Parys = 989 Vredefort=1625 Heilbron =1658 Edenville = 200 The total backlog is 4 472</p> <p><b>METSIMAHOLO: 17 827 H.Hs<sup>2</sup></b> The bulk water supply -9ML reservoir and water treatment working Mooiplaats well under construction 64 %( bulk line completed 100%)</p> <p><b>MAFUBE: 18 009 /20 237</b></p> <p>89% 100%</p>	<p>To give 1625 households in Vredefort house connections project to be implemented in 2013/14 FY</p> <p>To provide 401 households in Heilbron with house connections</p> <p>To provide 780 households in Parys with house connections to be completed by 2012/13 FY</p> <p>Lack of funds to construct to construct water network system</p> <p>Business Plan submitted to MIG/DWA and H/Settlement</p>		<p>Business Plan submitted to MIG for Funding waiting approval</p> <p>HSS to provide funding, not MIG</p> <p>Huge financial injection from national and provincial</p>

<sup>1</sup> Questions relating to the challenges identified for the 5 priority areas have been identified as well as other important questions that should be considered to inform the LGTAS Assessment.

<sup>2</sup> Total Households of 41 902 (including farms)

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
		ge of access), community expectations and the National norms.		Limited funding from MIG for bulk and reticulation infrastructure and registration of greenfields		departments
1.2	Access to sanitation	a) The level of basic service delivery in terms of the Municipality's target (the number of households in municipality with access and	<p><b>NGWATHE:</b> Provide water borne sanitation to 30 897 households, septic tanks to 287 , VIP 1 718</p> <p>30 897 have access to waterborne 4126 using Bucket: 912; Parys, 1652; Heilbron, 1562; Vredefort 287 Septic Tanks (Edenville)</p> <p>Total VIP toilets:1657 : Edenville 1599 ; Heilbron only 58 vip</p> <p>Total back log 4126</p> <p>To apply for budget maintenance on the project</p>	<p>Parys waste water treatment work project is already on execution phase to address the problem in Parys funded by MIG</p> <p>Heilbron Waste water treatment works is also on execution phase to address the waste water and sanitation issues also Funded by MIG</p> <p>Out fall sewer line project in Heilbron is already on its final execution Phase to address the waste water backlogs in Heilbron and its funded</p>		<p>The project is funded by Municipal Infrastructure Grand and monitored by internal Project Management Unit</p> <p>The project is funded by Municipal Infrastructure Grand and monitored by internal Project Management Unit</p> <p>The Project is funded by Water affairs Department</p>

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
		<p>percentage of access), community expectations and the National norms.</p>	<p><b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> 17669 Amelia sanitation project 72 % &amp; Pump station project at 5%</p> <p><b>MAFUBE:</b> Lack of funding for planned O&amp;M and skilled personnel, 17 372/20 237 86%</p> <p>100%</p>	<p>by Water affairs Parys extension 6 connection of sewer and stand pipes to 780 stands in Tumahole; Zuma and Winnie sections</p> <p>The area is too rocky and the project was budgeted for soft soil The project was changed from mid-block to street connections Community uprising and the project was on hold due to uprising</p> <p>Lack of Funding for house connections Business Plan submitted to H/Settlement</p> <p>Outsourcing of O &amp; M services</p>		<p>The project is funded by human settlements and will be completed end of March 2013</p> <p>2012/2013 Financial year end Application for Budget maintenance</p> <p>Skill personnel, training of personnel Funding</p>

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
1.3	Access to electricity	a) <b>The level of basic service delivery in terms of the Municipality's target</b> (the number of households in municipality with access	<p><b>FDDM:</b> Electrification of Farm dwellers houses Free Basic energy for Farm dwellers houses</p> <p><b>NGWATHE:</b> Provide 2000 proclaimed and un-proclaimed site with electricity 921 households electrified</p> <p><b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> 33 500 Households have access to electricity.</p>	<p>Lack of Local and district Municipal Electricity Master Plans Lack of Eskom's network capacity. Off grid and the high cost of rural electrification remains a challenge. No national policy on implementation of FBE for farm dwellers.</p> <p>Unable to get further funding from DoE till R12.5m allocated for</p>	<p>Request DoE to seriously consider Bulk supply projects Budget for Electrty Master plan in 2013-2014 budget Ensure Eskom are aware of new development Request Eskom and DoE to conclude a policy.</p>	<p>Treasury to provide for Bulk supply Funding for district Treasury to provide for Electricity Master Plan Funding for district Eskom to table plan and time frames Give higher rural electrification funding. Eskom and DoE to finalize a policy.</p>

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experienced  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
		and percentage of access), community expectations and the National norms.	<b>MAFUBE:</b> Lack of funding for planned O&M and skilled personnel, 1805 is a backlog 18432 has access to electricity 91%	Heilbron bulk upgrade can be used for the project allocated and accounted for  Lack of bulk electricity in a form of substation.  Projects and programmes to eliminate backlog. Frankfort has capacity problem for electricity. The municipality is in negotiations with ESKOM.		DoE, Treasury to avail funds  We need corporation between Eskom and national departments to expedite the capacity and supply problems of Mafube
1.4	Refuse removal and solid waste disposal	a) The level of basic service delivery in terms of the Municipality's target (the number of household	<b>Ngwathe:</b> House to house collection and registering of land fill sites  <b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> Currently the Municipality is doing door to door of refuse removal ± 40 000 households (90%).	Registering of land fill site Internal Fleet management systems (plant and equipment  (a) Shortage of staff and equipments and increase in formal and informal	Appoint ± 100 general workers, purchase 3 Compactor trucks ( 2 trucks to be received to address Gortin Phase 3,4&5)- 4 000 stands).	Municipal budget not able to cater for the day to day operations  Solicit funding from Sector Departments, District Municipality (Environmental affairs) and MIG funds.

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
		ds in municipality with access and percentage of access), community expectations and the National norms,	<p><b>MAFUBE:</b> 14 342 out of 20 327 Once a week for 71% Once a week for 100%</p>	<p>settlements.  (b) Removal of illegal dumping on periodical,  -leasing of refuse removal trucks - encourage community to do recycling  Rapid increase in household development. Inadequate resources to service the new developments , e.g plant Maintenance of plant and equipment</p>	<p>Purchase 1 Front-end-Loader and two Tipper Trucks to address eradication of illegal dumping.  Plan to acquire new plant and equipment</p>	
1.5	Access to municipal roads	What is the current situation with regard to municipal roads?	<p><b>FDDM:</b> a) Storm water canals in Tumahole.  b) Rehabilitation of streets in Parys.</p>	<p>a) Storm water flooding houses adjacent to canal.  b) Taxi route to be upgraded and potholes repaired.</p>	<p>a) Funding provided to solve problem  b)Funding</p>	<p>a) Solved  b) Consultant appointed.</p>

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
			<p><b>NGWATHE:</b> Ageing infrastructure on roads and the situation need an urgent intervention</p> <p><b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> 276 km (1656 0002(tarred/paved)<sup>3</sup> 315 km1890 000m2(Dirt road) 7,45 km paved interlocking road still under construction(65% progress) <b>MAFUBE:</b> NO Sites need to be licensed</p>	<p>Insufficient funding as the internal funding or budget not able to cater for roads maintenance</p> <p>Lack of Funding</p> <p>Lack of funding Sourcing for funding from stakeholders Business Plans were submitted to MIG and were referred to DEA, where feasibilities studies are a perquisite</p>	<p>provided to solve problem</p>	<p>Need assistance from the provincial department to assist (Roads, Police and Transport Department) Apply for Funding</p> <p>Need for seed capital for feasibility studies</p>
1.6	Formalisation of informal settlements	a) Is your municipality targeted in the National Upgrading Support Programme (NUSP)?	<p><b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> Yes it has</p> <p><b>MAFUBE:</b> NO</p>	<p>The programme is not active yet.</p> <p>Lack of adequate funding for upgrading of roads and maintenance Public works is assisting in upgrading some of the</p>		<p>The municipality to engage with the Housing Development Agency and Human Settlements regarding assistance needed Extensive capital injection from</p>

<sup>3</sup>Kms converted to m2

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
				roads in Cornelia		stakeholders
		b) Are you receiving any additional grants from National Treasury to assist with providing services to informal settlements?				
		c) Does your SDF / IDP plan provide for any formalization processes for informal settlements in your municipal area?	<b>NGWATHE: Yes</b> <b>METSIMAHOLO: Yes it does.</b> <b>MAFUBE: YES</b>	SDF in the process of being reviewed. The challenge has been a delay in the approval of the townships by the Provincial Department. A section 10 approval was applied for and granted by the Provincial Department such that services can be installed in the townships (Mooibraai and Mooiplaats) pending their		Legislation needs to be approved, Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Bill, such that municipalities are given power to adjudicate on development applications in their jurisdiction. This will speed up turnaround time in approval of such applications

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experienced  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
				approval.		and minimize the squatters
1.7	Human Settlements	d) Whether your municipality has been accredited as a housing delivery agent, and if information exists regarding the funding for executing such functions, the actual projects and lessons learned?	<b>NGWATHE: NO</b>  <b>METSIMAHOLO: NO</b>			5300 Erven granted received from provincial government to eradicate informal settlements as follows: Parys 1000 Erven Heilbron 1000erven Vredefort 700 Erven Koppies 2100 Erven Edenville 500 Erven Town planers is being appointed: priority is given to Koppies 2100 Erven Preliminary plans will be hand in at Ngwathe Council for approval at the end of February 2013
1.8	Service delivery protests	Service delivery challenges, indicating whether any service delivery protest took place in your	<b>NGWATHE:</b> <u>Vredefort :</u> Community (Mandela section) protest as a result of power outage due to cable burst: 1 & 2 May 2011 <u>Koppies:</u> Community march for provision of sites: 23 November 2011		Responses prepared on issues. New cable was installed (FDDM fund)	

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
		Municipality since the last elections (2011), and if information is available, details to be provided as to the causes and what each Municipality did to address same?	Parys: Youth march for economic freedom in their life time: 14 June 2012 <b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> Not applicable			
1.9	Indigent policy and register	a) Has the municipality developed an Indigent Policy to deal with categories of people who qualify in terms of the National poverty alleviation mechanisms?  b) To the extent possible, does your municipality have an indigent register,	<b>NGWATHE: YES.</b> <b>METSIMAHOLO: YES</b> <b>MAFUBE: YES</b>			
			<b>NGWATHE:</b> Yes, in the process of completion. To date 3854 applications approved and 116 rejected. <b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> 8371(Indigents) Register is updated Monthly. <b>MAFUBE:</b> YES	The only outstanding town is Heilbron which will be completed by end February 2013 Re-assessment Verification of new	Appointment of staff(field workers)	Complete register to be available beginning March 2013.

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
		what is the total number of beneficiaries and what is the frequency of status review?		applications		
1.10	Planning	a) Is your municipality currently using the simplified IDP framework to draft your own simplified IDP?	<b>NGWATHE: YES</b> <b>METSIMAHOLO: NO</b> <b>MAFUBE: YES</b>	None		
		b) Is your municipality using consultants for the drafting of the IDP?	<b>NGWATHE: NO</b> <b>METSIMAHOLO: YES</b> Consultant provide strategic support <b>MAFUBE: YES</b>	None NO		
		c) Is the simplified IDP accompanied by simplified sector specific	<b>NGWATHE: Not all the sector plans.</b>  <b>METSIMAHOLO: NO</b> <b>MAFUBE: YES</b>	Internal capacity and funding remain a challenge in this regard Lack of Sector Plans accompanied in IDP		NLM is to engage FDDM and other Sector Departments to finalize and submit Plan to be included in the IDP

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
		<p>plans?</p> <p>d) Are National and Provincial commitments reflected in the IDPs of municipalities? Do municipalities receive transfers for the implementation of these plans or do national and provincial departments implement these directly, e.g. are schools and clinics reflected in your IDPs?</p>	<p><b>FDDM:</b> Yes. The District IDP does reflect mostly Provincial commitments and these commitments are taking place in the jurisdiction of the local Municipalities.</p> <p><b>NGWATHE:</b> Yes they are reflected.</p> <p><b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> YES</p> <p><b>MAFUBE:</b> YES</p>	<p>Some of the departments do not however honor their commitments to the latter. Some just zoom into our space without our knowledge and conduct their business. Sector Departments to finalize and submit Plan to be included in the IDP</p>	<p>Improved communications.</p>	<p>Provincial Departments to coordinate during implementation phase for provision of technical support(i.e. basic services) by Municipality</p>

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
		e) Did the municipality adopt the process plan to guide the development of the IDP?	<b>FDDM:</b> Yes, The District Process plan was adopted by Council on the 30 <sup>th</sup> August 2012 <b>NGWATHE:</b> Yes it did <b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> YES IDP and Budget Process Plan is Adopted by Council. <b>MAFUBE:</b> YES	None		
		f) Has the IDP been posted on the municipal website?	<b>FDDM:</b> Yes, the District IDP was posted on the FDDM website after it was approved by Council. <b>NGWATHE:</b> Yes it has been posted. <b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> YES <b>MAFUBE:</b> The municipality is aware of such a requirement, unfortunately the website is not yet fully developed.	None		
		g) Does the municipality adhere to the IDP processes or not?	<b>FDDM:</b> Yes. The District Municipality does adhere to the IDP processes, guided by the IDP Process Plan. <b>NGWATHE:</b> To a larger extent we do. <b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> YES  <b>MAFUBE:</b> YES	Consistent commitment to adhere to Process Plan. The Office of Municipal Manager was engaged around the matter for improvement.	To ensure that every timeline is met as per Process Plan.	
		h) Are priority programmes for service delivery talking to	<b>NGWATHE:</b> Not all the sector plans. <b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> YES <b>MAFUBE:</b> YES	Internal capacity and funding remain a challenge in this regard		NLM is to engage FDDM and other

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
		the priorities identified by the people in your wards?				
		i) Is the municipal SDBIP and the budget aligned to the IDP?	<b>FDDM:</b> Yes they are aligned. The alignment process was achieved through the Municipal strategic session. <b>NGWATHE:</b> Yes they are reflected. <b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> YES <b>MAFUBE:</b> YES			
		j) Is the IDP aligned to the district, provincial and national priorities to ensure integrated development and service delivery?	<b>FDDM:</b> The IDP does make mention of the National PLANNING perspective as well as the FSGDS. <b>NGWATHE:</b> Yes it did <b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> YES <b>MAFUBE:</b> YES	The district does not know how to cascade or align their programmes with NSDP and FSGDS.		Need COGTA to assist or to intervene.
1.11	Execution	a) Is the municipality in a position to execute the plans as	<b>FDDM:</b> Yes, the municipality has capacity in all respective Departments within the Municipality to execute plans as contained in the IDP <b>NGWATHE:</b> To a larger extent we do.	Delay in implantation of Programmes/Plans	Project Task Team to be	

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
		developed and contained in the IDP? If not, why not?	<b>METSIMAHOLO: YES</b>  <b>MAFUBE: YES</b>		revitalized to ensure monitoring of project implementation	
		b) Has a public satisfaction survey been conducted by your municipality and what did it indicate with regard to the delivery of programmes?	<b>FDDM:</b> No, it has not been conducted.  <b>NGWATHE:</b> Not yet <b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> The Municipality last conducted survey regarding ward specific data on service delivery, socio-economic profiling and demographics in 2010. Targeted 1960; however, 1785 households were realized. The result showed performance was at least satisfactory.  <b>MAFUBE:</b> It has not yet been measured nor conducted.	The municipality has a challenge in conducting the public satisfaction survey.  Lack Funding	The municipality plans to do a follow-up survey, depending on availability of funding, to determine whether there has been an improvement in community satisfaction levels.	COGTA to advise on how to go about.
		c) Do you have any mechanisms to	<b>Ngwathe:</b> Yes, through IDP public participation such as Rep Forum and or Ward meetings. <b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> YES Ward-Based IDP Public Consultation meetings,	Lack of active involvement by Public to	Municipality (Office of	

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
		obtain feedback on the IDP based on performance of the municipality?	suggestion boxes and website platforms/mechanisms  <b>MAFUBE:</b> Yes it happens during IDP review periods.	participates in local IDPs. Municipality appointed Public Participation Officers to strengthen Public Participation.	Speaker and MM) to strengthen coordination and mechanisms for effective Public consultation.	
1.12	Multi stakeholder Coordination	a) Does your municipality demonstrate the ability to pull other stakeholders and sector departments together to deal with questions of service	<b>FDDM:</b> Yes the municipality is able to pull other stakeholders, through different forums that are sitting. Currently the forums that are active are the MTAS, Energy, Disaster advisory forum, IDP, IGR forum and the DCF.  <b>NGWATHE: Yes</b> <b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> Yes, IDP Representative Forums and Intergovernmental Relations Meeting are conducted monthly/quarterly.  <b>MAFUBE: YES</b>	The non attendance of local municipalities led to the failure of the forums like CFO and MMSs forum.  Non coordination of programmes to enhance service delivery.	The Municipal Manager has made an indication that all other forums that are not sitting must start to be functional.	Forums must start to be functional  Provincial/District COGTA to engage with sector departments/relevant stakeholders to participate actively.

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
		<p>delivery?</p> <p>b) If yes, how?</p>	<p><b>FDDM:</b> The Disaster Management Act 57 of 2002 instructs the District Municipality to have advisory forums once per quarter. The municipality is able to pull other stakeholders, through different forums that are sitting. Currently the forums that are active are the MTAS, Energy, Disaster advisory forum, IDP, IGR forum and the DCF.</p> <p><b>Ngwathe:</b> Through the involvement of ward committees; CDW's; NGO's such as religious forum, Services Deliveries forums, Youth Development Structures, associations of people living with disabilities</p> <p><b>METSIMAHOLO:</b> IDP Representative Forums and Intergovernmental Relations Meeting are conducted monthly/quarterly.</p> <p><b>MAFUBE:</b> There have always been healthy relations between the municipality and other sectors in decision making and effecting changes.</p>	<p>The problems experienced were non-attendance of local municipalities.</p> <p>Non coordination of programmes to enhance service delivery.</p>	<p>Have set up standing item for municipality to report on its activities at the forum. Ensure that it's obligatory.</p>	<p>Provincial/District COGTA to engage with sector departments/relevant stakeholders to participate actively.</p>
1.13	Project Consolidate	Whether your Municipality was enlisted as a priority Municipality in terms of "Project Consolidate" and how has Project	<b>NGWATHE:</b> Yes			

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
		Consolidate assisted to implement interventions required.				
1.14	Legislation impeding service delivery	a) Which pieces of legislation are impeding service delivery in your municipal area?	<b>NGWATHE:</b> DORA <b>MAFUBE:</b> None that are negatively affecting the municipality.			
		b) How are these pieces of legislation impeding service delivery?	<b>NGWATHE:</b> Unequal revenue distribution			

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
1.15	Disaster Management	a) Does your municipality have an integrated Disaster Management Plan and is it incorporated into the IDP?	<p><b>FDDM:</b> Yes, the draft plan is drawn in line with the IDP. Additional plan has included FOG (Field Operation Guide), contingency plans for hazards identified in the plan – now available are floods, heavy rains, HIV benefit concert festival .</p> <p><b>NGWATHE:</b> The Municipality has a draft, that was done together with FDDM and Free State Province Yes it is incorporated with the IDP  <b>METSIMAHOLO: NO</b></p>	<p>The municipality is yet to finalize the development of risk assessment plan for the entire district.</p> <p>The department has shortage of Human Resource, and working equipment for Disaster Management.</p>	<p>Submit draft plan before May 2013 for Council adoption  Appoint service provider to conduct a detailed risk assessment plan (to use services of already appointed service provider Auerecon).</p>	<p>Need to be budgeted for in 2013/14 for personnel, equipment</p>
		b) Are there any disaster response and recovery projects in the IDP? If yes, please indicate	<p><b>FDDM:</b> The municipality has project plans for flooding throughout the District which is not incorporated in the IDP.</p> <p><b>METSIMAHOLO: NO</b>  <b>MAFUBE:</b> Yes they are covered as district's competence.</p>	<p>This was drafted during IDP finalization stage and unable to include as the project was still being concluded.</p>	<p>To be included in the next IDP.</p>	

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
		which projects?				
		c) Are there any disaster management education, public awareness and research projects in the IDP? If yes, please indicate which projects?	<b>FDDM:</b> No, there are no disaster management education, public awareness and research projects in the IDP.	This was drafted during IDP finalisation stage and unable to include as the project was still being concluded.	To be included in the next IDP.	
		d) Did your municipality budget for disaster management? If yes, what	<b>FDDM:</b> Yes the municipality has budgeted for disaster management. Operational = R5 672 700.00 Capital = R100 000.00 Total = R5 772 700.00	None		

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
		amount?				
		e) Are any disaster risk reduction considerations integrated in sectoral programmes and projects as contained in the IDP of the municipality and budgeted for?	<b>FDDM:</b> During compilation of IDP the involvement of sector departments was minimal and integrated approach lacked.	We did not have sufficient staff to be able to attend to IDP phases.	We will plan early and include the process on year plan with responsible personnel and sector departments.	
		f) Does your municipality have a fire prevention and	<b>FDDM:</b> Work in progress.  <b>Ngwathe:</b> Yes	Fire safety compliance within the municipality, relevant qualifications are identified Not yet revisited by the Municipality and not being budgeted for	Training of the fire fighters.  Need to be included in the IDP(FDDM & NLM)	

No.	Priority Turn Around Focal Areas	Questions relating to challenges identified <sup>1</sup>	Response to questions (Current situation / Baseline as at Dec 2012)	(a) Detailed explanation of the challenges experience  b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	(b) Municipal actions taken to address the challenge	Proposed solution or intervention to address challenges experienced (including unblocking action needed from municipal and other Spheres and Agencies)
		protection plan?				
		g) Does your municipality have an operational disaster management centre?	<b>FDDM:</b> Yes, currently being equipped as the system is yet to be tested.  <b>NGWATHE:</b> Yes	Appointment of dedicated personnel to make use of the system. System/computers has been installed but not yet operational	Will be ensuring that the system works before the next financial year.	As it is the FDDM project they need to finalized installation process.
		h) Does your municipality have an operational fire services station?	<b>FDDM:</b> Yes there is an operational fire services station situated in Mafube.  <b>NGWATHE:</b> Yes  <b>MAFUBE:</b> We do have but it is the District's responsibility.	Shortage of staff and satellite stations.  Shortage of personnel and Working Equipment's e.g. Fire Engine	Increase personnel and open satellite stations particularly in N3 Wilge Plaza. It has to be budgeted for in 2013/14	

# CHAPTER 6

## SECTOR DEPARTMENTS PROJECTS & PROGRAMMES

Department of education	Project Name	Source of funding	Municipality /Region	Type of infrastructure	Project Duration		Budget Programme name	Total Project Cost	
					Start	Finish			
	<b>NEW AND REPLACEMENT OF ASSETS</b>								
	Sasolburg: Kopanelang Thuto	DBE	Metsimaholo	Primary School	24 CR, Admin, Hall, MC	Jul 2011	Jun 2013	EIG	22 800
	Sasolburg: Sakubusha/Kahobotjha	DBE	Metsimaholo	Secondary	24 CR, Admin, Hall, MC	Jul 2011	Sept 2013	EIG	26 100
	Sasolburg : Amelia	DBE	Metsimaholo	Primary School	New School	April 2014	Mar 2017	EIG	40 000
	Viljoenskroon: D. Sello	DBE	Moqhaka	Primary	New School	April 2014	Mar 2019	EIG	48 000
	Final accounts / fees	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Various	To be identified	April 2014	Mar 2019		

Department of education	Project Name	Source of funding	Municipality /Region	Type of infrastructure	Project Duration		Budget Programme name	Total Project Cost	
					Start	Finish			
	<b>UPGRADES AND ADDITIONS</b>								
	Halls	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Halls	New Halls	Nov 2011	Dec 2016	EIG	190 500
	Laboratories etc.	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Labs, MC, Etc	New laboratories & media centres	Jan 2013	Mar 2014	EIG	76 800
	Administration blocks	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Admin	New Admin blocks	Nov 2011	Mar 2014	EIG	268 900
	Additional Classroom	DBE	FS: Whole Province	CR	Additional Classroom	Nov 2012	Mar 2014	EIG	220 500
	Ablution Facilities- Educators & Learners	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Sanitation	Eaducator/ Learner toilet blocks	Jan 2013	Mar 2014	EIG	117 240

Department of education	Project Name	Source of funding	Municipality /Region	Type of infrastructure		Project Duration		Budget Programme name	Total Project Cost	
						Start	Finish			
	<b>UPGRADES AND ADDITIONS</b>									
	Connection to municipality sewer lines	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Sanitation	Educator/ Learner toilet blocks	Jan 2013	Mar 2016	EIG	-	
	Special Schools	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Spec/S	Educator/ Learner toilet blocks	Jun 2011	Mar 2016	EIG	125 896	
	Grade R Facilities	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Grade R CR	New grade R classroom	Jan 2013	Mar 2016	EIG	335 200	
	Mobile Classrooms	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Mobile CRs	New grade R classroom	Apr 2013	Mar 2016	EIG	10 000	
	Unacceptable structures	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Various	Upgrading of unacceptable structures	Jun 2011	Mar 2016	EIG	56 600	

Department of education	Project Name	Source of funding	Municipality /Region	Type of infrastructure		Project Duration		Budget Programme name	Total Project Cost
						Start	Finish		
<b>NEW AND REPLACEMENT OF ASSETS</b>									
	Nutrition Centres	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Kitchens	New Kitchens	Jan 2013	Mar 2016	EIG	36 450
	Perimeter Fencing	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Fences	Upgrading of fences	Jan 2013	Mar 2016	EIG	-
	PM Fees, Final accounts/ fees	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Various	Payment of PSP's	Nov 2012	Mar 2016	EIG	-

Department of education	Project Name	Source of funding	Municipality /Region	Type of infrastructure	Project Duration		Budget Programme name	Total Project Cost	
					Start	Finish			
	<b>REHABILITATION, RENOVATIONS &amp; REFURBISHMENTS</b>								
	Hostels	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Hostels	Renovations of Hostels	Oct 2011	Mar 2016	EIG	-
	Electrical Renovations & upgrades	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Electricity	Electrical renovations	Apr 2013	Mar 2016	EIG	-
	Renovations	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Renovations	General renovations to existing schools	Apr 2013	Mar 2016	EIG, IGP	-
	Math Lab	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Math Labs	600 Math Labs over MTEF	Apr 2012	Mar 2016	EIG	-
	Math Labs: Replacement Mobiles	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Mobile CRs	Mobile replacements	Apr 2012	Mar 2016	EIG	-

Department of education	Project Name	Source of funding	Municipality /Region	Type of infrastructure	Project Duration		Budget Programme name	Total Project Cost	
					Start	Finish			
<b>REHABILITATION, RENOVATION &amp; REFURBISHMENTS</b>									
	Storm damages	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Various	As reported	Jan 2013	Mar 2016	EIG	22 287
	Farm school-refurbishment	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Various	To be identified	Jan 2013	Mar 2016	EIG	24 000
	Facilities Management	DBE	FS: Whole Province	Various	To be identified	Nov 2012	Mar 2016	EIG	11 900

<b>DEPARTMENT OF HUMAN SETTLEMENT</b>	<b>Project Name</b>	<b>Municipality /Region</b>	<b>Budget</b>	
	<b>1. PROGRAMME ( RECTIFIED RDP STOCK)</b>			
			R3.4. Million	
	Parys 120 Maono	Ngwathe		
	Viljoenskroon 70 (2 rooms)	Moqhaka		
	Brentpark(Kroonstad)	Moqhaka		
	Viljoenskroon: D. Sello	Moqhaka		
Parys 21 Maono	Ngwathe			
<b>TOTAL NO. OF PLANNED HOUSES = 102</b>				

DEPARTMENT OF HUMAN SETTLEMENT	Project Name	Municipality /Region	Budget
	<b>2. PROGRAMME (BLOCKED PROJECTS)</b>		
	Viljoenskroon 500	Moghaka	R3.9. M
	Heilbron 294 (Maono)	Ngwathe	R8.4 M
	Orangeville 22	Metsimaholo	R 15.4 M
	Sasolburg 22	Metsimaholo	R 2M
Parys 200	Ngwathe	R 2.6 M	

DEPARTMENT OF HUMAN SETTLEMENT	Project Name	Municipality /Region	Budget
	<b>3. IRDP. PHASE 1 (PLANNING /SERVICES) NEW PROJECTS</b>		
	Rammulutsi water & sewer	Moqhaka	R 11.4M
	Refengkgotso w/s reticulation for 2614 sites	Metsimaholo	R 25 M
	Phiritona ext 10 (922) & Tumahole ext 7 (964)	Ngwathe	R 26 M
	Phiritona ext 9 (600)	Ngwathe	R1 M
	Amelia toile structure connections	Metsimaholo	R4.5 M
	Rammulutsi Northleige Electrification	Moqhaka	R4 M

DEPARTMENT OF HUMAN SETTLEMENT	Project Name	Municipality /Region	Budget
	<b>1. IRDP. PHASE 4 (PLANNING /SERVICES) NEW PROJECTS</b>		
	Deneysville / Zamdela 150	Metsimaholo	
	Orangeville	Metsimaholo	R 743, 418
	Sasol 200	Metsimaholo	
	Sasol 400	Metsimaholo	R1 50,000
	Sasol 500, Koena	Metsimaholo	R8.7 M
	Frankfort 500 Ubuhlebethu	Mafube	R8.7 M
	Tweeling 300-EMM	Mafube	R8.2M
	Villiers 300 -Bright	Mafube	R7.3
Viljoenskroon 100	Moqhaka	R7.6	
Steynsrus 50	Moqhaka	R371, 953	
Edenville	Ngwathe	R420,000	
Heilbron 300 (chileshe)	Ngwathe	R4,8 M	
Heilbron 250 (Mgithana)	Ngwathe	R 5M	

DEPARTMENT OF HUMAN SETTLEMENT	Project Name	Municipality /Region	Budget
	<b>1. IRDP. PHASE 4 (PLANNING /SERVICES) NEW PROJECTS</b>		
	Koppies 350 (Thotela)	Ngwathe	R8,4M
	Parys 200 (Hlengiwe)	Ngwathe	R7.0 M
	Sasolburg 400 (Sunfox)	Ngwathe	R20, 000

DEPARTMENT OF HUMAN SETTLEMENT	Project Name	Municipality /Region	Budget
	<b>4. INSTITUTIONAL SUBSIDIES (NEW PROJECTS)</b>		
	Bokamoso ba bana	Moqhaka	R4,4M
	Mphatlalatsane	Moqhaka	R7.0 M
	<b>5. CRU (NEW PROJECT)</b>		
	ZAMDELA HOSTEL	Metsimaholo	R 51, 000

DEPARTMENT OF HUMAN SETTLEMENT	Project Name	Municipality /Region	Budget	
	<b>Land Restitution</b>			
			<b>R 10,3M</b>	
	Kroonstad 171 (Moleboheng)	Moqhaka		
	Kroonstaad 200- Thobela	Moqhaka		
	Kroonstaad 393 – Thobela	Moqhaka		
	Orangeville 48 - Thobela	Metsimaholo		

**DEPARTMENT  
OF  
ENERGY**

MUNICIPALITY	ALLOCATION FOR 2014/2015 ELECTRIFICATION PROJECTS
MOQHAKA	R5 MILLION
NGWATHE	R5 MILLION
METSIMAHOLO	R7 MILLION
MAFUBE	R3 MILLION

**DEPARTMENT OF RURAL  
DEVELOPMENT AND LAND  
REFORM**

PROJECT NAME	MUNICIPALITY	BUDGET
SDF	FDDM	R 581 046.00
SDF	MAFUBE	R 360 240.00

Department of health	Project Name	Source of funding	Municipality /Region	Type of infrastructure	Project Duration		Budget Programme name	Total Project Cost	
					Start	Finish			
<b>NEW INFRASTRUCTURE NEEDS</b>									
	Amelia CHC	Health Infrastructure Component	Metsimaholo	CHC	1	April 2012	Mar 2014	EIG	-
	Parys CHC	Health Infrastructure Component	Ngwathe	CHC	1	April 2012	July 2013	EIG	125 896
	Schonkenville Clinic	Health Infrastructure Component	Ngwathe	Clinic	1	April 2012	Mar 2014	EIG	335 200

	Phekolong Clinic / Cornelia	Health Infrastructure Component	Mafube	Clinic	1	April 2012	Mar 2017	EIG	10 000
	Viljoenskroon Clinic	Health Infrastructure Component	Moqhaka	Clinic	1	April 2012	Sept 2013	EIG	56 600

Department of Water Affairs	Project Name	Source of funding	Municipality /Region	Type of infrastructure	Project Duration		Budget Programme name	Total Project Cost	
					Start	Finish			
<b>NEW INFRASTRUCTURE NEEDS</b>									
	Amelia CHC	Health Infrastructure Component	Metsimaholo	CHC	1	April 2012	Mar 2014	EIG	-
	Parys CHC	Health Infrastructure Component	Ngwathe	CHC	1	April 2012	July 2013	EIG	125 896
	Schonkenville Clinic	Health Infrastructure Component	Ngwathe	Clinic	1	April 2012	Mar 2014	EIG	335 200

	Phekolong Clinic / Cornelia	Health Infrastructure Component	Mafube	Clinic	1	April 2012	Mar 2017	EIG	10 000
	Viljoenskroon Clinic	Health Infrastructure Component	Moqhaka	Clinic	1	April 2012	Sept 2013	EIG	56 600

<b>Department of Water Affairs</b>	<b>Municipality /Region</b>	<b>Project Name</b>	<b>Budget Allocation for 2014/15</b>
	<b>ACCELERATED COMMUNITY INFRASTRUCTURE PROGRAMME PROJECTS – 2014/15</b>		
	NGWATHE LM	Water Security for Parys, Koppies & Vredefort	R 5 650 000
	<b>REGIONAL BULK INFRASTRUCTURE GRANT PROJECTS-2014/15</b>		
MOQHAKA LM	Moqhaka BWS	R 15 000 000	

	MAFUBE LM	Mafube Bulk Sewer	R 20 000 000
	NGWATHE LM	Ngwathe Bulk Sewer & Water Phase 2	R 14 000 000

<b>Department of Water</b>	<b>Municipality /Region</b>	<b>Project Name</b>	<b>Budget Allocation for 2014/15</b>
	<b>ACCELERATED COMMUNITY INFRASTRUCTURE PROGRAMME PROJECTS – 2014/15</b>		
	NGWATHE LM	Water Security for Parys, Koppies & Vredefort	R 5 650 000
	<b>REGIONAL BULK INFRASTRUCTURE GRANT PROJECTS-2014/15</b>		

	MOQHAKA LM	Moqhaka BWS	R 15 000 000
	MAFUBE LM	Mafube Bulk Sewer	R 20 000 000
	NGWATHE LM	Ngwathe Bulk Sewer & Water Phase 2	R 14 000 000

DEPARTMENT OF	Project Name	Source of funding	Municipality /Region	Type of infrastructure		Project Duration		Budget Programme name	Total Project Cost
						Start	Finish		
<b>NEW INFRASTRUCTURE NEEDS</b>									
	Soc Dev Office.KGI Building Kroonstad	IEA	Moqhaka LM	Office	1	April 2008	May 2014	PW Infrastructure	R 23 000 000
	Parys Testing Station Upgrade	Equitable Share	Ngwathe	Testing Centre		April 2014	Mar 2015	PW Infrastructure	R 2 000 000

	Cornelia T/S Revital PW/FS/11/70	IEA	Mafube	Access Roads		April 2011	Mar 2017	EPWP	R 29 000 000
	Parys T/S Revital PW/FS/11/63	IEA	Ngwathe	Access Roads		April 2011	Mar 2017	EPWP	R 77 290 000
	Vredefort T/S Revital PW/FS/11/67	IEA	Ngwathe	Access Roads		April 2011	Mar 2017	EPWP	R 39 000 000
	Marabastad T/S Revital PW/FS/11/65	IEA	Moqhaka	Access Roads		April 2011	Mar 2017	EPWP	R 38 000 000
	Heilbron T/S Revital	IEA	Ngwathe	Access Roads		April 2014	Mar 2017	EPWP	R 39 000 000
	National Youth Ser	Equitable Share	Moqhaka	Other		April 2012	Mar 2015	EPWP	Ongoing

# CHAPTER 7

# FINANCIAL PLAN

PART 1

**1.1 EXECUTIVE SUMMARY**

**TOTAL REVENUE BY SOURCE**

Operating Grants and Subsidies	R 142,499,000
Interest Earned - External Investments	R 5,008,571
Other Income	R 2,741,170
Transfer from Accumulated Surplus	<u>R 62,898,460</u>
<b>Total Revenue By Source</b>	<b><u>R 213,147,201</u></b>

**TOTAL EXPENDITURE BY TYPE**

Employees Salaries and Allowances	R 71,755,800
-----------------------------------	--------------

Employee Social Contributions	R 15,634,600
Remuneration of Councillors	R 7,586,076
Infrastructural Projects L/M	R 29,483,152
Interest External Borrowings	R 4,500,000
Repair and Maintenance	R 2,311,900
General Expenses - Other	R 66,625,973
General Expenses - Financial Services	R 1,644,700
General Expenses Contracted Services	R 7,520,000
Capital Expenditure	<u>R 6,085,000</u>
<b>Total Expenditure By Type</b>	<b><u>R 213,147,201</u></b>

## **1.2 BUDGET DETAILS**

### **Breakdown of total revenue**

<b><u>Operating grants and subsidies</u></b>	<b>Original Budget 2013/14</b>	<b>Adjusted budget 2013/14</b>	<b>Budget year 2014/15</b>	<b>Budget year +1 2015/16</b>	<b>Budget year +2 2016/17</b>
MUNICIPAL SYSTEMS IMPROVEMENT GRANT	890 000	890 000	934 000	967 000	1 018 000
EQUITABLE SHARE	12 470 000	12 470 000	11 860 000	11 351 000	9 711 000
LOCAL GOV. FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT GRANT	1 250 000	1 250 000	1 250 000	1 250 000	1 300 000
RSC LEVY REPLACEMENT GRANT	122 031 000	122 031 000	125 691 000	128 806 000	132 438 000
RURAL ROADS ASSETS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM GRANT	-	-	1 709 000	2 039 000	2 119 000
EXPANDED PUBLIC WORKS PROGRAMME INTEGRATED GRANT	1 000 000	1 000 000	1 055 000	-	-
<b><u>Interest earned-external investments</u></b>					

CURRENT AND GENERAL - INTEREST	3 312 212	3 312 212	1 791 429	1 791 429	429	1 791
INVESTMENTS INTEREST	6 800 000	6 800 000	3 217 142	3 217 142	3 217 142	
<b>Other Income</b>						
SETA INTERN PROGRAM	-	750 000	-	-		-
INSURANCE CLAIMS RECEIVED	-	900 470	-	-		-
JAZZ FESTIVAL	-	1 266 788	1 200 000	-		-
RECOVERY OF DEBT - COUNCILOR/OFFICIALS	31 590	31 590	-	-		-
SKILLS LEVY(SETA)	200 070	200 070	175 070			-
STADIUM REPAIR & MAINTENANCE INCOME (PROVINCE)			1 000 000			
SUNDRY INCOME	52 650	381 464				-
PRIVATE TELEPHONE DECUCTIONS	-		288 000			
TENDER DEPOSITS	42 120	87 020	78 100			-
<b>Transfer from accumulated surplus</b>	51 243 083	68 055 023	62 898 460			
<b>TOTAL REVENUE</b>	<b>199 322 725</b>	<b>219 425 636</b>	<b>213 147 201</b>	<b>149 421 571</b>	<b>571</b>	<b>151 594</b>

#### Narrations

- Municipal Improvement Systems Grant increased by 4.94 % as compared with the 2013/14 financial year
- Equitable share decreased by 4.89% as compared with the 2013/14 financial year allocation and furthermore a decrease is expected in the two outer years 2015/16 and 2016/17
- Financial Management Grant is remaining unchanged throughout the financial years with the exception of 2016/17 financial year, where a slight increase will be realized.
- RSC Levy Replacement Grant increased with 3% as compared to the 2013/14 financial year
- A new allocation named Rural assets roads management system grant amounting to

R 1 709 000 is to be realized in the 2014/15 financial year, its purpose is to assist rural district municipalities to set up rural RAMS, and collect road and traffic data on municipal road networks in line with the Road Infrastructure Strategic Framework for South Africa (RISFSA), expected outputs from the grant include;

- Road inventory data
  - Condition assessment, traffic data and rural access bridges
  - Pavement and bridge management systems compatible with national standards
- The allocation for Expanded Public Works Programme increased with 5.5% in the 2014/15 financial year as compared to the 2013/14 financial year.
  - In aggregate the anticipated growth rate on operating grants and subsidies is at 3.53% for 2014/15 financial year as compared to the 2013/14 financial year.
  - Interest expected to be earned on short term investments and on bank accounts is expected to decrease with 50.47% under 2014/15 financial year as compared to the year 2013/14 this is due to the anticipated reduction in cash on hand that is expected to fund the projected budget deficit in 2013/14 and 2014/15 financial years
  - Other income is at 1.29% of the total revenue under 2014/15 financial year and projections are based on the latest statistics and thus realistic on a year to year basis.
  - An amount of R 62 898 460 is expected to be drawn from surpluses accumulated from previous financial years and which are not ring-fenced for other purposes, these surpluses are kept as short term investments.

Interest earned-external investments

	<b>Original Budget 2013/14</b>	<b>Adjusted budget 2013/14</b>	<b>Budget year 2014/15</b>	<b>Budget year +1 2015/16</b>	<b>Budget year +2 2016/17</b>
CURRENT AND GENERAL - INTEREST	3 312 212	3 312 212	1 791 429	1 791 429	1 791 429
INVESTMENTS INTEREST	6 800 000	6 800 000	3 217 142	3 217 142	3 217 142
<b>TOTAL INTEREST EARNED-EXTERNAL INVESTMENTS</b>	<b>10 112 212</b>	<b>10 112 212</b>	<b>5 008 571</b>	<b>5 008 571</b>	<b>5 008 571</b>

- Interest expected to be earned on short term investments and on bank accounts is expected to decrease with 50.47% under 2014/15 financial year as compared to the year 2013/14 this is due to the anticipated reduction in cash on hand that is expected to fund the projected budget deficit in 2013/14 and 2014/15 financial years.
- Other income is at 1.29% of the total revenue under 2014/15 financial year and projections are based on the latest statistics and thus realistic on a year to year basis.
-

Other Income

	<b>Original Budget 2013/14</b>	<b>Adjusted budget 2013/14</b>	<b>Budget year 2014/15</b>	<b>Budget year +1 2015/16</b>	<b>Budget year +2 2016/17</b>
SETA INTERN PROGRAM	-	750 000			-
INSURANCE CLAIMS RECEIVED	-	900 470			-
JAZZ FESTIVAL	-	1 266 788	1 200 000		-
RECOVERY OF DEBT - COUNCILOR/OFFICIALS	31 590	31 590			-
SKILLS LEVY(SETA)	200 070	200 070	175 070		-
STADIUM REPAIR & MAINTENANCE INCOME (PROVINCE)			1 000 000		
SUNDRY INCOME		381 464			

	52 650				-
PRIVATE TELEPHONE DECUTIONS	-		288 000		
TENDER DEPOSITS	42 120	87 020	78 100		-
<b><u>TOTAL OTHER INCOME</u></b>	<b>326 430</b>	<b>3 617 402</b>	<b>2 741 170</b>	-	-

- Other income is at 1.29% of the total revenue under 2014/15 financial year and projections are based on the latest statistics and thus realistic on a year to year basis.

#### Transfer from accumulated surplus

- An amount of R 62 898 460 is expected to be drawn from surpluses accumulated from previous financial years and which are not ring-fenced for other purposes, these surpluses are kept as short term investments.

#### **Breakdown of total expenditure**

##### Employees Salaries and allowances

R 71 755 800 (disclosed as an item under Part 2)

##### Employee Social Contributions

R 15 634 600 (disclosed as an item under Part 2)

##### Remuneration of Councillors

R 7 586 076 (disclosed as an item under Part 2)

Infrastructural Projects L/M

R 29 483 152 (disclosed as an item under Part 2)

Interest on external borrowings

R 4 500 000

The projected amount for financing activities is at R 4 500 000, this is expected to settle the DBSA loans under 2014/15 financial year.

Repair and maintenance

R 2 311 900

Repairs and maintenance is at 1.08 % of the total budget; this is budgeted for the maintenance of air conditioning, buildings, furniture & equipment, lift, security system and vehicles.

General expenses- Other

R 66 625 973

	<b>Budget year 2014/15</b>	<b>Budget year +1 2015/16</b>	<b>Budget year +2 2016/17</b>
ACCOMMODATION	1 611 475	1 687 955	1 779 104
SUBSISTENCE	868 600	904 964	953 832
COMMUNICATION	692 744	730 152	769 580
COMMUNICATION CELLPHONES	964 535	1 016 620	1 071 517
CONFERENCES & WORKSHOPS	909 032	949 688	1 000 971

STATIONERY	70 000	73 780	77 764
PRINTING	459 000	483 786	509 910
MEMBERSHIP FEES	1 289 411	1 359 039	1 432 427
TRANSPORT REIMBURSIVE - OFFICIALS	1 373 000	1 415 522	1 491 960
FLIGHT TICKETS AND VEHICLE RENTALS	488 024	494 351	521 046
STORES AND MATERIALS	340 000	358 360	377 711
AUDIT FEES	1 800 000		
COUCILLORS FUNERAL SUPPORT	60 000	63 240	66 655
DISTRIBUTION TO BENEFECIARIES (HIV & AIDS)	1 200 000	1 264 800	1 333 099
ENTERTAINMENT (COUNCIL GENERAL)	222 614	234 635	247 305
SECURITY- ALARM MONITORING	39 529	41 664	43 914
TRAVELLING- COUNCIL MEETINGS	447 646	471 819	497 297
BOOKS & ORDINANCES (EXECUTIVE MAYOR)	20 000	21 080	22 218
BURSARIES-HIGHER EDUCATION	800 000	843 200	888 733
BURSARIES - FET ENROLMENT	400 000	421 600	444 366
CAMPAIGNS - EXECUTIVE MAYOR	1 000 000	1 054 000	1 110 916
DISABILITY PROGRAMMES	250 000	263 500	277 729
LEKGOTLA (SODA)	500 000	527 000	555 458
HIV/AIDS AWARENESS PROGRAMME	5 000 000	5 270 000	5 554 580

DONATIONS & GRANTS EXECUTIVE MAYOR	250 000	263 500	277 729
ENTERTAINMENT - EXECUTIVE MAYOR	100 000	105 400	111 092
SPECIAL PROGRAMMES	800 000	843 200	888 733
RENTAL-MAYOR'S VEHICLE	50 000	52 700	55 546
YOUTH DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMMES	500 000	527 000	555 458
COMMUNITY AWARDS	100 000	105 400	111 092
ENTERTAINMENT - SPEAKER	150 000	158 100	166 637
PUBLIC PARTICIPATION MEETINGS	800 000	843 200	888 733
CAPACITY BUILDING- COUNCILLOR	50 000	52 700	55 546
CLLRS, WARD COMMITTEE & CDW CAPACITY BUNING	50 000	52 700	55 546
OUTREACH PROGRAMMES	700 000	737 800	777 641
STAKEHOLDERS SUMMIT	60 000	63 240	66 655
WARD COMMITTEE INDABA	200 000	210 800	222 183
CAMPAIGNS - SPEAKER	1 000 000	1 054 000	1 110 916
PUBLIC EDUCATION	60 000	63 240	66 655
TRAVELLING EXPENSES - COUNCILLORS(MEETIN	20 000	21 080	22 218
ENTERTAINMENT - MAYCO - FINANCE	15 000	15 810	16 664
ENTERTAINMENT - MAYCO - PMPW	15 000	15 810	16 664
ENTERTAINMENT - MAYCO - HEALTH AND PUBLIC SAFETY	15 000	15 810	16 664

ENTERTAINMENT - MAYCO - SOCIAL DEV & SPORTS	15 000	15 810	16 664
ENTERTAINMENT - MAYCO - LED & TOURISM	15 000	15 810	16 664
ENTERTAINMENT - MAYCO - CORPORATE SERVICES	15 000	15 810	16 664
TRAVELLING EXPENSES - COUNCILLORS(MEETIN	117 200	123 529	130 199
BOOKS & ORDINANCES (MUNICIPAL MANAGER)	4 000	4 216	4 444
COMMUNICATION & MARKETING	500 000	527 000	555 458
CORPORATE GIFTS	50 000	52 700	55 546
CORPORATE REPORTS	316 000	333 064	351 049
CORPORATE PUBLICATIONS	770 000	811 580	855 405
ENTERTAINMENT (MUNICIPAL MANAGER)	40 000	42 160	44 437
GIS ANNUAL MAINTAINANCE	160 000	168 640	177 747
IGR PROGRAMS	50 000	52 700	55 546
RISK COMMITTEE	70 000	73 780	77 764
AUDIT COMMITTEE	150 000	158 100	166 637
RISK MANAGEMENT	100 000	105 400	111 092
SECURITY RELATED SERVICES & INVESTIGATIO	100 000	105 400	111 092
STRATEGIC SESSIONS	500 000	527 000	555 458
TEA & COFFEE - INTERNAL	40 000	42 160	44 437
MONITORING AND EVALUATION	100 000	105 400	111 092

ASSET VERIFICATIONS	100 000	105 400	111 092
ASSISTANCE TO LM (CAPACITY BUILDING)	1 500 000	1 581 000	1 666 374
AUDIT FEES	1 600 000	1 686 400	1 777 466
BOOKS & ORDINANCES (FINANCE)	10 000	10 540	11 109
ENTERTAINMENT (FINANCE)	10 000	10 540	11 109
FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT EXPENDITURE	1 250 000	1 250 000	1 300 000
FLEET MANAGEMENT SYSTEM	85 000	89 590	94 428
FUEL & OIL (RUNNING COSTS)	1 000 000	1 054 000	1 110 916
INTERNAL CONTROLS	300 000	316 200	333 275
BUDGET ROAD SHOW - PUBLIC PARTICIPATION	120 000	126 480	133 310
LICENCES	20 000	21 080	22 218
PUBLICATIONS	2 000	2 108	2 222
VEHICLE TRACKING DEVICE INSTALLATIONS	18 000	18 972	19 996
ENTERTAINMENT (FINANCE-DIRECTOR)	10 500	11 067	11 665
COMPUTER NETWORK (COMMUNICATION)	120 000	126 480	133 310
COMPUTER SOFTWARE MAINTENANCE & UPGRADES	200 000	210 800	222 183
COMPUTER LICENCES & INSTALLATIONS	250 000	263 500	277 729
COMPUTER SOFTWARE ANNUAL FEES	555 000	584 970	616 558
ENTERTAINMENT (IT)	3 000	3 162	3 333

INTERNET SERVICE PROVIDER FEES	200 000	210 800	222 183
IT SYSTEM IMPLEMENTATION	200 000	210 800	222 183
STORAGE FACILITIES (BACKUPS OFF SITE)	12 000	12 648	13 331
TV LICENCES & SUBSCRIPTIONS	5 000	5 270	5 555
GIS HOSTING - FDDM & LM	150 000	158 100	166 637
WEB PAGE DEVELOPMENT & HOSTING	40 000	42 160	44 437
BOOKS & ORDINANCES (PMPW)	4 000	4 216	4 444
COMPUTER SOFTWARE,LICENCE AND UPGRADES	50 000	52 700	55 546
ENTERTAINMENT (PMPW)	10 000	10 540	11 109
ENTERTAINMENT (PMPW)	8 000		-
HR STIPEND(LEARNERSHIPS)	350 000	368 900	388 821
LEARNERSHIP STIPENDS (FIRE,WATER & RESCUE)	1 500 000	1 581 000	1 666 374
ADVERTISEMENTS	300 000	316 200	333 275
ADMIN STRATEGY & PLAN	100 000	105 400	111 092
BOOKS & ORDINANCES (CSS)	30 000	31 620	33 327
BURSARIES - INTERNAL	500 000	527 000	555 458
EMPLOYEE ASSISTANCE PROGRAM	250 000	263 500	277 729
ENTERPRISE WIDE - GROUP LIFE POLICY	90 000	94 860	99 982
ENTERTAINMENT (CSS)	20 000	21 080	22 218

LANGUAGE ISSUES	20 000	21 080	22 218
LEGAL SERVICES	350 000	368 900	388 821
MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS	16 500	17 391	18 330
MUNICIPAL SERVICES	1 100 000	1 159 400	1 222 008
OCCUPATIONA HEALTH SAFETY	40 000	42 160	44 437
WELLNESS & BEREAVEMENT	20 000	21 080	22 218
PROTECTIVE CLOTHING (CSS)	30 000	31 620	33 327
POSTAL SERVICES	25 000	26 350	27 773
RECRUITMENT COSTS	150 000	158 100	166 637
RENT - EQUIPMENT	2 000 000	2 108 000	2 221 832
RENT - EQUIPMENT(CONSUMPTION)	500 000	527 000	555 458
KITCHEN UTENSIL AND EQUIPMENT	40 000	42 160	44 437
SPORTS DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMMES-INTERNAL	90 000	94 860	99 982
CLEANING MATERIALS	120 000	126 480	133 310
CLEANING/HYGIENE SERVICES	600 000	632 400	666 550
ELECTRONIC FILING SYSTEM	500 000	527 000	555 458
DEPARTMENTAL STRATEGIC PLANNING	200 000	210 800	222 183
TRAINING	1 000 000	1 054 000	1 110 916
PROCEDURE MANUALS	100 000	105 400	111 092

BOOKS & ORDINANCES (FIRE)	2 000	2 108	2 222
ENTERTAINMENT (FIRE)	10 500	11 067	11 665
PROTECTIVE CLOTHING (FIRE)	300 000	316 200	333 275
TV LICENCES	9 000	9 486	9 998
TRAINING FIREFIGHTERS	200 000	210 800	222 183
FIRE ADVISORY FORUM	20 000	21 080	22 218
DEVELOPMENT RESEARCH PROGRAMME	200 000	210 800	222 183
ADVERTISEMENTS	80 000	84 320	88 873
AWARENESS CAMPAIGN	700 000	737 800	777 641
BOOKS & ORDINANCES (DISASTER)	30 000	31 620	33 327
EMERGENCY & SPECIAL PROGRAMME	1 400 000	1 475 600	1 555 282
DISASTER ADVISORY FORUM	30 000	31 620	33 327
ENTERTAINMENT (DISASTER)	20 000	21 080	22 218
REDUCTION OF FLOODS INCIDENTS	1 000 000	1 054 000	1 110 916
SUPPORT TO LOCAL MUNICIPALITY(DISASTER RISK)	200 000	210 800	222 183
PROTECTIVE CLOTHING (DISASTER)	150 000	158 100	166 637
ENTERTAINMENT (DISASTER-DIRECTOR)	6 000	6 324	6 665
ASSISTANCE TO SMALL AGRI PROJECTS	500 000	527 000	555 458
BOOKS & ORDINANCES (LED)	10 000	10 540	11 109

COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT	200 000	210 800	222 183
ENTERTAINMENT (LED)	15 000	15 810	16 664
ENTREPRENEURIAL SUPPORT SYSTEM	400 000	421 600	444 366
REGIONAL LED BODY	11 000	11 594	12 220
FOOD SECURITY & SELFHLP PROGRAMMES	250 000	263 500	277 729
GRANTS TOURISM INFO OFFICES	200 000	210 800	222 183
CORPERATIVE SUPPORT	300 000	316 200	333 275
MARKETING AND PROMOTIONS	600 000	632 400	666 550
PHOTOGRAPHIC MATERIAL & REPRODUCTION	10 000	10 540	11 109
TOURISM DEVELOPMENT & PROJECTS	400 000	421 600	444 366
REGIONAL PERFORMING ARTS DEVELOPMENT	300 000	316 200	333 275
TOURISM SERVICE AWARENESS CAMPAIGN	600 000	632 400	666 550
PERFORMING ARTS DEV FUND: SASOLBURG THEA	100 000	105 400	111 092
VREDEFORT DOME STRUCTURE	200 000	210 800	222 183
ENTERTAINMENT (LED-DIRECTOR)	10 000	10 540	11 109
ADVERTISEMENTS (EHS)	10 000	10 540	11 109
AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT	250 000	263 500	277 729
BOOKS & ORDINANCES (EHS)	15 000	15 810	16 664
CLEANEST TOWN COMPETITION	100 000	105 400	111 092

CLIMATE CHANGE & GREEN ECONOMY	2 000 000	2 108 000	2 221 832
ENTERTAINMENT ( EHS)	35 000	36 890	38 882
ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH PROJECTS	400 000	421 600	444 366
MHS AUXIALRY SERVICES PROJECTS	400 000	421 600	444 366
POSTAL SERVICES	3 000	3 162	3 333
RENT - OFFICE	250 000	263 500	277 729
RENT - EQUIPMENT	500 000	527 000	555 458
SAMPLING TESTING	400 000	421 600	444 366
UNIFORMS AND PROTECTIVE CLOTHING	30 000	31 620	33 327
VECTOR CONTROL	30 000	31 620	33 327
CPD EVENTS	50 000	52 700	55 546
COMPUTER SYSTEM - HEALTH INFORMATION	50 000	52 700	55 546
ENTERTAINMENT (EHS- DIRECTOR)	15 000	15 810	16 664
PLANNING AND COORDINATION (DISTRICT HEALTH)	20 000	21 080	22 218

General Expenses - Financial Services

R 1 644 700

	Budget year 2014/15	Budget year +1 2015/16	Budget year +2 2016/17
IDP IMPLEMENTATION & MONITORING	500 000	527 000	555 458
MUNICIPAL SYSTEM IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM	-	967 000	1 018 000
PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM (PMS)	150 000	158 100	166 637
BUSINESS CONTINUITY	500 000	527 000	555 458
SECURITY SERVICES - BUILDINGS	120 000	126 480	133 310
SPATIAL PLANS	400 000	421 600	444 366
MASTER PLANS	1 000 000	1 054 000	1 110 916
CLEANING SERVICES	450 000	-	-
PUBLIC INFO EDUCATION & RELATIONS	600 000	632 400	666 550
ANNUAL REVIEW DISASTER MANAGEMENT PLAN	200 000	210 800	222 183

This include projections on skill development levies,  
bank charges and insurance on non-current assets

General Expenses - Contracted Services

R 7 520 000

DRAFT

ESTABLISHMENT OF KOPPIES GREEN HOUSE	2 000 000	2 108 000	2 221 832
HIGHWAY INFORMATION OFFICES	200 000	210 800	222 183
UPGRADING MUNICIPAL RESORTS	600 000	632 400	666 550
SPORTS DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMMES	500 000	527 000	555 458
DEVELOP INTERGRATED WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN	-	600 000	632 400
DEVELOP STANDARDIZED SET ENVIRO BY LAWS	300 000	316 200	333 275
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>7 520 000</b>	<b>9 018 780</b>	<b>9 504 576</b>

### Capital expenditure

R 6 085 000 (disclosed as an item under Part 2)

### **Breakdown of total expenditure**

#### Interest External Borrowings

The projected amount for financing activities is at R 4 500 000, this is expected to settle the DBSA loans under 2014/15 financial year.

#### Repair and Maintenance

- Repairs and maintenance is at 1.08 % of the total budget; this is budgeted for the maintenance of air conditioning, buildings, furniture & equipment, lift, security system and vehicles.

#### General Expenses - Other

- General expenses include the following:
- Inflation rate of 5.8% and averaging were used for 2014/15 projections on general expenditure

.1 Budget funding

<b>Description</b>	<b>Budget year 2014/15</b>
Cash on bank accounts	19 073 460
Roll- overs from 2013/14 financial year	10 025 000
Transfers from accumulated surplus (not ring fenced for other purposes)	33 800 000
<b>Total</b>	<b>62 898 460</b>

- The above is based on realistic information as per total expenditure to date report, bank balances and investment registers.

## 2.2 Infrastructural Projects L/M

- The terms Infrastructural projects to Local municipalities; Grants and subsidies paid (capital) and; transfers and grants are used interchangeable and these are projects implemented by the district on behalf of local municipalities.

-the breakdown is as follows:

### Infrastructural projects

#### **PROJECTS ROLLED OVER FROM 2013/2014**

Item	Description	<u>2014/15</u> <u>Amount</u>
1	Rehabilitation of Kruis street Ngwathe (Parys)	3 525 000
2	Sewer yard connections in Gortin	3 000 000
3	Sewer network and outfall sewer Qalabotjha	3 500 000
	<b>Sub-total</b>	<b><u>10 025 000</u></b>

#### **ADDITIONAL FUNDING REQUEST FOR 2014/2015**

Item	Description	
1	Sewer yard connections in Gortin additional	1 677 152
2	Outfall sewer from industrial area of villiers to pumpstation	-
3	Development of Stadium parking	4 650 000
4	Rehabilitation of Kruis street Ngwathe (Parys) additional funding	4 667 000
5	Koppies Stormwater System	-
6	Qalabotjha sewer	5 500 000
7	Electrification Farm dwellers houses	200 000
8	EPWP	1 055 000
9	Rural roads assets management system grant	<u>1 709 000</u>
	<b>Sub-total</b>	<b><u>19 458 152</u></b>

### 2.3 Councillors allowances and employee benefits

- Employee related costs as a percentage of total expenditure for 2014/15 financial year is at 41% and as weighted against total revenue which excludes transfers from accumulated surplus is at 58.16%, employee related costs grow on an annual basis in line with the Consumer Price Index relevant to the applicable period and the collective Salary and Wage agreement.
- Remuneration of councilors as a percentage of total expenditure is at 3.56%

### 2.4 Capital expenditure

This expenditure line item comprises of:

Furniture & Equipment	R 580 000
Vehicles	R 700 000
IT equipment	R 500 000
Refurbishment on buildings	R 2 625 000
Security system	R 180 000
Fire equipment	<u>R 1 500 000</u>

**Total capital expenditure**      **R 6 085 000**

# CHAPTER 8

## SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

## **CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION**

### **1. INTRODUCTION**

#### **1.1. Background**

A Municipal Spatial Development Framework is a legally required component of the Municipal Integrated Development Plan, which every Municipality in South Africa has to produce.

The 2011/2012 review is based on inputs as received from the following sources:

- The Fezile Dabi District Municipality IDP 2011/2012;
- Inputs from Officials from the Free State Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs; and
- Inputs from Fezile Dabi District Municipality (Sector Plan Inputs); and
- Stakeholders Meetings (Provincial Sector Departments, Local Municipalities and Officials from Fezile Dabi District Municipality).

In view of the restricted time-frame for the submission of the revised Spatial Development Framework, the following elements should be taken into consideration:

- The respective Local Municipal Spatial Development Framework was still under review and for such reason, the 2010/11 Local Spatial Development Framework's were used as an input;
- The Spatial Development Framework of Ngwathe Local Municipality has not been updated over the last 3 years; and
- No inputs could be obtained from other Provincial Sector Departments.

In view of the above aspects, the 2011/2012 Fezile Dabi District Municipality Spatial Development Framework was amended to address the respective inputs as outlined, but still needs to be further amended to incorporate inputs from the respective Local Municipalities and Provincial Sector Departments.

The Fezile Dabi District Municipality Spatial Development Framework fulfil the following relationship with the Local Municipalities:

- The Fezile Dabi District Municipality plays an coordinating and supportive function to the respective Local Municipality;
- It provides guiding principles in terms of future development;
- It integrates inputs and reduces duplication between the respective Local Municipalities; and
- It facilitates inputs from Provincial Departments which have an impact on the Local Municipalities.

## **1.2. Fezile Dabi District Municipality, Vision and Objectives**

### **1.2.1. Vision**

“Fezile Dabi District Municipality strives to be a leading Municipality in delivering effective, affordable and sustainable quality service to its communities”.

### **1.2.2. Mission**

In order to achieve the set vision of the Municipality, the following mission statements have been identified:

- Promoting proper planning and implementation of projects and programmes;
- Setting standards;
- Being accountable;
- Communication;
- Capacity building of staff and communities;
- Having proper systems and processes; and
- Ensuring a sustainable, affordable and effective service delivery.

### **1.2.3. Objectives**

Although a number of development objectives were identified in the Fezile Dabi District Municipality IDP only the objectives with a spatial implication is highlighted within the Spatial Development Framework. The objectives are as follows:

- Facilitate the provision of potable water and sanitation in the District;
- To ensure that Municipal Health Services are effectively and equitably provided in the Districts – Waste management, Sanitation;
- To support Local Municipalities with the provision of roads and storm water;
- To facilitate the provision of electricity in the District;
- To promote sustainable human settlements;
- To facilitate the provision of land for disadvantaged and emerging farmers;
- To effectively quantify and prioritize needs of service delivery;
- To create an environment that stimulates economic growth;
- To identify untapped agricultural opportunities;
- To promote and enhance the SMME sector in the District;
- To plan, coordinate and support sports, arts and culture; and

- To promote tourism in the District.
- 

### 1.3. Purpose of the Spatial Development Framework

THE PURPOSE OF THE SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK IS TO:

- BE A STRATEGIC, INDICATIVE AND FLEXIBLE FORWARD-PLANNING TOOL WITH ITS MAIN AIM TO **GUIDE** PLANNING AND DECISIONS ON LAND DEVELOPMENT;
- DEVELOP AN **ARGUMENT OR APPROACH** TO THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE AREA OF JURISDICTION WHICH IS CLEAR ENOUGH TO ALLOW DECISION-MAKERS TO DEAL WITH UNANTICIPATED / UNEXPECTED SITUATIONS;
- DEVELOP A **SPATIAL LOGIC** WHICH GUIDES PRIVATE SECTOR INVESTMENT;
- ENSURE THE SOCIAL, ECONOMIC AND ENVIRONMENTAL **SUSTAINABILITY** OF THE AREA;
- ESTABLISH **PRIORITIES** FOR PUBLIC SECTOR DEVELOPMENT AND INVESTMENT; AND
- IDENTIFY **SPATIAL PRIORITIES** AND PLACES WHERE PUBLIC-PRIVATE **PARTNERSHIPS** ARE POSSIBLE.

WITHIN THE RURAL CONTEXT IT IS NECESSARY TO ALSO DEAL SPECIFICALLY WITH NATURAL RESOURCE MANAGEMENT ISSUES, LAND RIGHT ISSUES AND TENURE ARRANGEMENTS, LAND CAPABILITY, SUBDIVISION AND CONSOLIDATION OF FARMS AND THE PROTECTION OF PRIME AGRICULTURAL LAND.

### 1.4. Content of the Spatial Development Framework

THE CONTENT OF THIS FEZILE DABI DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK DOCUMENT IS STRUCTURED AS FOLLOWS:

- **CHAPTER 1** SERVES AS AN INTRODUCTION AND BACKGROUND TO THE STUDY;
- **CHAPTER 2** COVERS THE LEGAL REQUIREMENTS AND POLICY FRAMEWORKS, IN NATIONAL, PROVINCIAL AND LOCAL CONTEXT, WHICH PROVIDES THE TERMS OF REFERENCE FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF THIS SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK;
- **CHAPTER 3** GIVES AN OVERVIEW OF THE CURRENT SITUATION IN THE FEZILE DABI DISTRICT WITH REGARDS TO ASPECTS SUCH AS SOCIO-ECONOMIC, DEMOGRAPHIC, INFRASTRUCTURE, ENVIRONMENT, URBANISED AREAS, RURAL AREAS, ETC.;

- **CHAPTER 4** SUMMARISES THE DEVELOPMENT OPPORTUNITIES AND CONSTRAINTS;
- **CHAPTER 5** COVERS THE PROVINCIAL SPATIAL DIRECTIVES;
- **CHAPTER 6** REFERS TO THE ALIGNMENT WITH ADJACENT MUNICIPAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK'S;
- **CHAPTER 7** REFERS TO THE SECTOR PLANS (SPATIAL IMPACT);
- **CHAPTER 8** COVERS THE FEZILE DABI DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK;
- **CHAPTER 9** DEALS WITH THE SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK ALIGNMENT WITH OBJECTIVES, PROJECTS AND AREAS OF INTERVENTION.

#### 1.5. THE STUDY AREA: FEZILE DABI (SEE MAP 1 A AND B)

FEZILE DABI DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY IS ONE OF THE FIVE DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY LOCATED WITHIN THE FREE STATE PROVINCE. IT COMPRISE OF FOUR LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES, WHICH ARE: METSIMAHOLO LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, MAFUBE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, MOQHAKA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND NGWATHE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY OF WHICH THE COMPOSITION OF EACH OF THE RESPECTIVE MUNICIPALITIES IS INDICATED IN TABLE 1.1. THE DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY MEASURES A TOTAL OF 21301 SQUARE KILOMETRES IN EXTENT AND IS BORDERED BY THE VAAL DAM AND VAAL RIVER TO THE NORTH WHICH ALSO SERVES AS A BOUNDARY BETWEEN THE FREE STATE, GAUTENG AND NORTH WEST PROVINCE.

**TABLE 1.1: URBAN CENTRES IN FEZILE DABI DM**

<b>Mafube Local Municipality</b>	<b>Metsimaholo Local Municipality</b>	<b>Moqhaka Local Municipality</b>	<b>Ngwathe Local Municipality</b>
Frankfort/ Namahadi	Sasolburg/ Zamdela	Kroonstad/Maokeng	Parys/Tumahole
Villiers/ Qalabotjha	Deneysville/Refengkgotso	Viljoenskroon/ Rammulotsi	Heilbron/Phiritona
Cornelia/Ntswanatsatsi	Oranjeville/Metsimaholo	Steynsrus/ Matlwangtlwang	Koppies/Kwawatsi
Tweeling/Mafahlaneng			Vredefort/Mokwallo

Source: Department of Local Government and Housing Free State

## **Chapter 2: legal framework**

### **2. LEGAL AND POLICY FRAMEWORK**

#### **2.1. Introduction**

In order to guide spatial development within Fezile Dabi District Municipality, attention should first be given to National and Provincial Guidelines, applicable to spatial development.

The Local Government: Municipal Systems Act (2000) requires that a Spatial Development Framework (SDF) be reflected as part of a Municipality's Integrated Development Plan (Section 26(e)). In Section 35(2), the Act states that the Spatial Development Framework prevails over plans as defined in Section 1 of the Physical Planning Act, 1991 (Act 125 of 1991). The Planning and Development Act of 2003 spell out the minimum elements that must be included in a Spatial Development Framework. It also proposes that the Spatial Development Framework operate as an indicative plan, whereas the detailed administration of land development and land use changes is dealt with by a Land Use Management Scheme. It thus provides a direct legal link between the Spatial Development Framework (with its forward planning focus) and the Land Use Management Scheme (which serves development control functions). This link is the key to successful local spatial planning, land use management and land development.

The Local Government: Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations (August 2001) provide further detail on what the Spatial Development Framework must achieve and what it must contain. It, however, focuses on detail that is different from that covered in the White Paper on Spatial Planning and Land Use Management. The Regulations highlight that the Spatial Development Framework must give effect to DFA principles. They draw attention to the need for strategies and policies; guidelines for Land Use Management Systems (LUMS); a capital investment framework; strategic assessment of environmental impacts; programmes and projects; a visual representation of the desired spatial form.

#### **2.2. National and Provincial Legislation and Policies**

The most prominent National - and Provincial Legislation and Policies applicable to Spatial Planning is summarised in Table 2.1.

**Table 2.1: National and Provincial Legislation and Policies**

Applicable Legislation	Reference to Spatial Planning
<b><i>Development Facilitation Act, 67 of 1995</i></b>	The main purpose of this act was to streamline the decision-making processes of local government regarding planning and development. In terms of the DFA, the Chapter 1 principals are crucial for guiding rural and urban development.
<b><i>Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 117 of 1998</i></b>	The purpose of this legislation includes the primary aspects for the establishment of municipalities in accordance with the requirements relating to categories and types of municipalities.
<b><i>Environmental Conservation Act, 73 of 1989</i></b>	This act was passed to provide for the effective protection and controlled utilization of the environment and for matters incidental thereto.
<b><i>National Environmental Management Act, 107 of 1998</i></b>	The main purpose of this legislation is to provide for co-operative environmental governance by establishing principles for decision-making on matters affecting the environment, institutions that will promote co-operative governance and procedures for coordinating environmental functions exercised by organs of state; and to provide for matters connected therewith.

Applicable Legislation	Reference to Spatial Planning
<p><b><i>Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 32 of 2000</i></b></p>	<p>The main purpose of this act is to empower local government to move progressively towards the social and economical upliftment of communities and to provide basic services to all residents, especially the poor and disadvantaged.</p>
<p><b><i>Government Gazette No.22605 of 2001 (Municipal Systems Act, 2000 and Municipal Planning Performance Management Regulations 2001)</i></b></p>	<p>The objectives of a Spatial Development Framework of an Integrated Development Plan are specified in the Government Gazette No. 22605 dated 24 August 2001.</p>
<p><b><i>AsgiSA – Accelerated Shared and Growth Initiative</i></b></p>	<p>AsgiSA – Guiding development initiatives focusing on Infrastructure Programmes, Land Use and Regulations.</p>
<p><b><i>NSDP – National Spatial Development Perspective (2007)</i></b></p>	<p>Ensures shared understanding of national space economy (Spatial Restructuring, Service Backlogs, Growth Nodes) and provides normative principles for development planning.</p> <p>The following development categories have been identified:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Innovation and Experimentation;</li> <li>• Production – high value differentiated goods;</li> <li>• Production – labour intensive;</li> <li>• Public Services and Administration;</li> <li>• Retail and Services;</li> <li>• Tourism.</li> </ul>

Applicable Legislation	Reference to Spatial Planning
<b><i>Free State Growth and Development Strategy (2005-2014)</i></b>	<p>The following strategies have been identified (Refer to Chapter 5):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Economic growth, development and unemployment;</li> <li>• Social and human development;</li> <li>• Justice and crime prevention;</li> <li>• Efficient governance and administration.</li> </ul>
<b><i>Free State Spatial Development Framework (2009 Draft)</i></b>	<p>The following spatial framework structuring elements have been identified (Refer to Chapter 5):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Centres;</li> <li>• Nodes;</li> <li>• Hubs;</li> <li>• Transportation Corridors;</li> <li>• Development Corridors;</li> <li>• Zones.</li> </ul>
<b><i>White Paper on Spatial Planning and Land Use Management, 2001</i></b>	<p>Amongst others, which have been covered in other mentioned pieces, the indication of major movement routes.</p>
<b><i>Local Government: Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations, 2001</i></b>	<p>Incorporate the Spatial Development Framework into the Municipal IDP and Public Participation.</p>

### **2.3. Summary of Key Issues and Principles for Spatial Planning Linked to Sectoral Categories**

Table 2.2 provides a summary of the key issues and principles, as derived from the respective legislation and policy documents linked to Sectoral Categories to be considered during the preparation of Spatial Development Frameworks.

**Table 2.2: Key Issue and Principles linked to Sectoral Categories**

Sectoral Category	Sub-Category	Key Issue and Principles
A) Physical	A1: Land Management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Promote more compact development of urban areas.</li> <li>• Limit urban sprawl.</li> <li>• Correction of historically distorted spatial patterns.</li> <li>• Promote integrated land development in rural and urban areas in support of each other.</li> <li>• Development and planning shall promote efficient and rapid development.</li> <li>• Development shall provide systems to manage the use of land to give effect to spatial development policies and to provide legal protection of land and development rights.</li> <li>• Indicate the desired patterns of land use in the Municipality.</li> <li>• Address spatial reconstruction of the Municipality.</li> <li>• Provide strategic guidance in respect of location and nature of development.</li> <li>• Set out basic guidelines for a Land Use Management System in the Municipality.</li> <li>• Development shall promote the integration of social, economic, environmental, institutional, infrastructural and spatial aspects of the development.</li> <li>• Identify programmes and projects for the development of land within the Municipality.</li> </ul>
	A2: Environmental	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicate a strategic assessment of the environmental impact within a Municipal area.</li> <li>• Protection of agricultural resources.</li> <li>• Preserving of natural resources.</li> <li>• Safe utilization of land by considering biophysical factors.</li> </ul>
	A3: Infrastructure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Development shall optimize the use of existing engineering infrastructure.</li> <li>• Promote convenient access to infrastructure.</li> </ul>
	A4: Housing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Promote for the development of formal and informal settlements.</li> <li>• Discourage the illegal occupation of land.</li> </ul>
	A5: Visual Representation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicate where public and private land development and infrastructure investment should take place.</li> </ul>

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicate desired or undesired utilization of space in a particular area.</li> <li>• Identify areas where strategic intervention is required.</li> <li>• Areas where priority spending is required.</li> </ul>
<b>B) Economic</b>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Encourage the participation of all sectors of the economy and promote partnerships as to maximize development.</li> <li>• Economic growth should be explored in areas with a medium to high resource base and high human need.</li> <li>• Economic development should be supported by infrastructure investment where there is already a medium to high level of economic activity and where resource potential is medium to high.</li> </ul>
<b>C) Social</b>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Development shall optimize the use of existing social infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>D) Financial</b>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Promote sustainable development within the fiscal means of the Municipality.</li> <li>• Set out a capital investment framework for the Municipalities development programme.</li> </ul>

**E) Institutional**

- Spatial Development has to inform, and be informed by the planning of other spheres of government, including sectoral /departmental planning of line agencies.
- Mutual alignment between National and Provincial principles, planning requirements, local needs and resources must be conducted in the spirit of co-operative governance.
- Development and planning shall promote sustainable development within the institutional and administrative means of the Municipality and Province.
- Meet the basic needs of all citizens in an affordable way.
- Municipalities shall provide clear laws and procedures; and access to information, promoting trust and acceptance among those likely to be affected by it.
- Planning and development procedures and discussions shall be consistent with the general principles as set out in National and Provincial Legislation.
- Development shall give equal opportunities to all persons to actively, participate, object or make representations and appeal in matters of development thereby promoting decision making in the public interest.
- Set out objectives that reflect the spatial form of the Municipality.
- Align with the Spatial Development Frameworks of neighbouring Municipalities.
- Development shall ensure that organs of state co-ordinate the interests of the various sections involved in or affected by development so as to minimize capacity demands on scarce resources.

## **CHAPTER 3: SITUATION ANALYSIS**

### **3. SITUATION ANALYSIS**

#### **3.1. Socio-Economic and Demographic Overview**

##### **3.1.1. Population and Density**

The District Municipality is approximately 21 301 square kilometres in extent, with a population of 474 089 persons, 149 095 households, and an average household size of 3.2 people. This population is distributed at an average density of 22.3 people/km<sup>2</sup> which reflects a low population pattern. This trend is largely owing to the extent of the rural area.

Metsimaholo Local Municipality has the highest population density at 90 people/km<sup>2</sup>, followed by Moqhaka Local Municipality (21.5 persons/km<sup>2</sup>), Ngwathe Local Municipality (13/5 persons/km<sup>2</sup>) and Mafube Local Municipality (11.7 persons/km<sup>2</sup>).

Table 3.1 provides a profile of the population figures, average household size and density within the District.

**Table 3.1: Population, Distribution and Density, 2007**

<b>Municipal Area</b>	<b>Number of people</b>	<b>Number of House -holds</b>	<b>Average house -hold size</b>	<b>Area (km<sup>2</sup>)</b>	<b>Population Density per km<sup>2</sup></b>
<b>Fezile Dabi</b>	<b>474 089</b>	<b>149 095</b>	<b>3.2</b>	<b>21 301</b>	<b>22.3</b>
Mafube	53 722	14 005	3.8	4 604.4	11.7
Metsimaholo	154 658	37 320	4	1717.1	90.1
Ngwathe	95 187	32 872	2.9	7055	13.5
Moqhaka	170 522	64 898	2.6	7 924.6	21.5

Source: Community Survey 2007

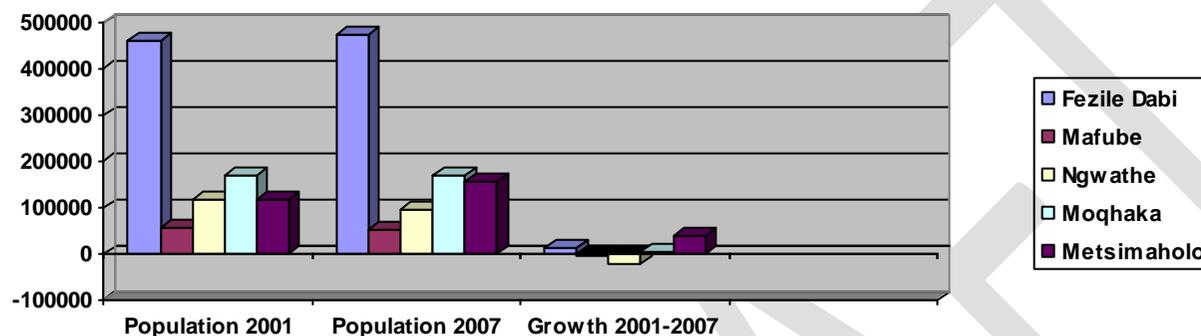
From Table 3.1, the conclusions are as follows:

- Moqhaka Local Municipality represents the largest population (36%) followed by Metsimaholo Local Municipality (33%), Ngwathe Local Municipality (20%) and Mafube Local Municipality (11%);
- The average household size within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality is 3.2 persons;
- The population density is the highest in Metsimaholo Local Municipality (90 persons/km<sup>2</sup>) with the average of the District, only 22.3 persons per ha.

### 3.1.1.1. Population Growth between 2001 and 2007

The population growth between 2001 and 2007 within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality only calculates to 13 773 persons, as indicated in Figure 3.1.

**Figure 3.1:** Population growth (2001-2007)



Source: Community Survey 2007

From Figure 3.1 it is evident that the Municipalities of Mafube and Ngwathe experienced negative growth levels between 2001 and 2007 with Ngwathe being the most affected of the Municipalities, with a decrease of 23 623 persons. Metsimaholo Local Municipality had the largest growth of 38703 persons.

### 3.1.1.2. Age and Gender Distribution

The age and gender distribution reflects important information regarding the spatial needs of the population. It is reflecting the life stages and anticipated demand for specific needs which should spatially be provided for Table 3.2 indicates the age and gender distribution within the District.

**Table 3.2:** Age and Gender Distribution - Local Municipal Areas, 2006

Gender	Mafube	Metsimaholo	Ngwathe	Moqhaka	Fezile Dabi
Male	47.73%	51.98%	47.46%	51.60%	50%
Female	52.27%	48.02%	52.54%	48.40%	50%
Age Breakdown	Mafube	Metsimaholo	Ngwathe	Moqhaka	Fezile Dabi
0-4	10.14	8.90	9.19	8.36	8.9

5-19	38.03	28.94	34.26	30.00	31.8
20-29	16.57	20.99	16.74	17.65	18.1
30-49	20.56	28.46	22.28	28.55	25.9
50-64	8.53	8.11	9.68	9.33	9
Over 65	5.61	3.43	6.84	4.91	5.2
Age Unknown	0.57	1.18	1.01	1.20	1.1

Source: Demarcation Board 2006

Deriving from Table 3.2, the conclusions are as follows:

- The gender distribution is equal between males and females.
- The dominant age groups influencing spatial planning is between 5-19, 20-29 and 30-49 years of age.
- The District's population is also characterised with a relative large segment of youth (under the age of 19), which comprise 40.7% of the population.

Based on the age breakdown of the District Municipality, it is evident that the population structure is “young” which is prevalent in a developing country. With the “young” age structure, it is evident that the demand for housing, social facilities and job creation will increase.

### **3.1.2. Economic Indicators**

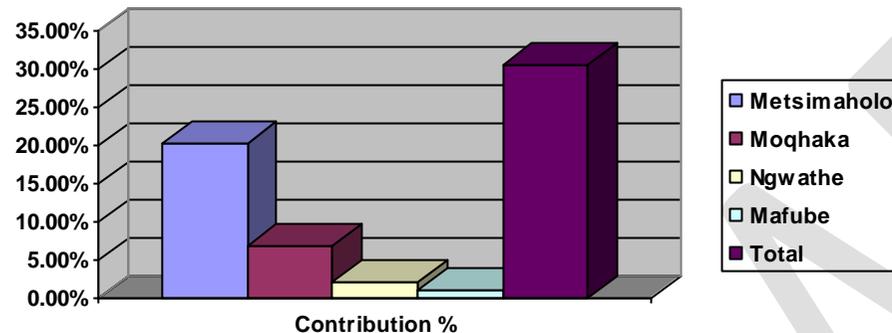
The economic indicators for the Fezile Dabi District Municipality and the respective Municipalities are as follows:

### 3.1.2.1. Gross Value Added (GVA)

The Fezile Dabi District Municipality is the second largest contributor, after Motheo District Municipality, to the Free State economy with 30.46%. The GVA is measured in terms of the value of goods and services produced in an area or sector of the economy (Global Insight, 2007).

The GVA per Municipality to the Free State economy is indicated in Figure 3.2:

**Figure 3.2:** GVA Contribution per Local Municipality



Source: Global Insight, 2007

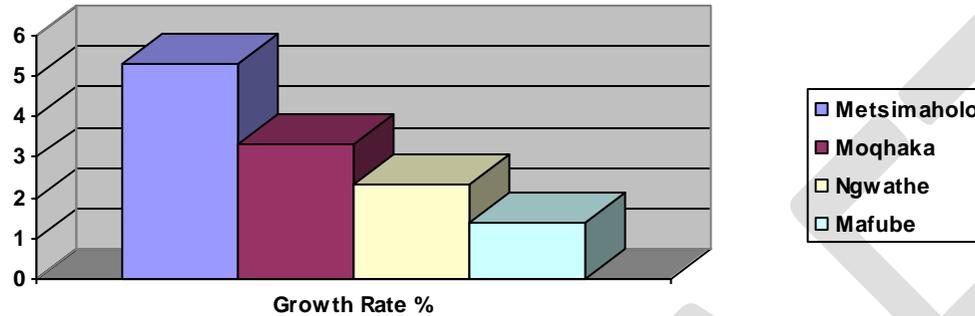
From the above Figure, it is evident that Metsimaholo Local Municipality is the largest contribution in the District, followed by Moqhaka Local Municipality, Ngwathe Local Municipality and Mafube Local Municipality.

### 3.1.2.2. Growth Rate

Based on the research by Global Insight, 2007 it was found that the Fezile Dabi District Municipality had the largest growth rate of all the Municipalities with 5.32% between 2000 and 2007, with a growth rate of 7.43% alone in 2007.

The average growth rate of the respective Municipalities between 2000 and 2007 is indicated in Figure 3.3.

**Figure 3.3: Growth Rate (2000-2007)**



Source: Global Insight (2007)

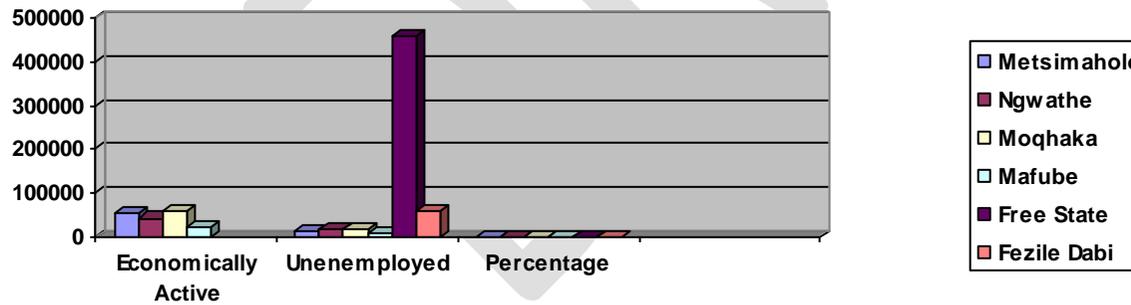
From the above Figure it is evident that Metsimaholo Local Municipality had an above average growth rate, a comparison to other areas.

**3.1.2.3. Unemployment Rate (See Map 2)**

The average unemployment rate in 2007 within Fezile Dabi District Municipality was 33.6%, in comparison with the 41.3% of the Free State Province.

The unemployment rate per Municipality is indicated in Figure 3.4.

**Figure 3.4: Unemployment per Local Municipality (2007)**



Source: Global Insight 2007

It is evident that the District is in need of a proper development strategy in order to create employment opportunities, in order to reduce unemployment and associated poverty. It is important that the municipal areas with the highest unemployment rate should be targeted as key areas for development intervention- Mafube and Ngwathe Local Municipalities.

### 3.1.2.4. Economic Structure and Sectoral Growth Rates

The sectoral structure of an economy is a good indication of its diversification and dependency on a particular sector. The analysis covers the broad economic sectors, as well as the manufacturing industries.

#### A) Sector Contribution in the Economy of Fezile Dabi District Municipality in Comparison with the Province

The economic sector contribution to the economy of the District is very important in the understanding of the challenges faced by the economy in general. Table 3.3 is analysing the contribution of the each sector in the economy of the region.

**Table 3.3:** Sector Percentage Contribution in the economy of the region

Economic Sector	Fezile Dabi		Free State	
	1996	2004	1996	2004
Agriculture	6.2	3.5	6.5	4.3
Mining	5.4	4.4	13.5	8.0
Manufacturing	45.8	51.7	21.0	25.0
Construction	4.3	2.5	4.0	3.0
Water	4.5	3.7	3.4	2.8
Transport	5.2	6.6	7.7	10.9
Trade	7.6	7.5	12.2	13.7
Finance	7.0	6.8	11.3	11.2
Community Services	13.9	13.5	20.5	20.9
<b>Total</b>	<b>100.0</b>	<b>100.0</b>	<b>100.0</b>	<b>100.0</b>

Source: Quantec Database, 2004

The dominant position of manufacturing sector in respect of the economy of the District should be noted. Overall, about 45.8% of the District's economic output is generated in manufacturing and is followed by community services at 13.9%. The rest are contributing relatively low compared to the aforementioned sectors.

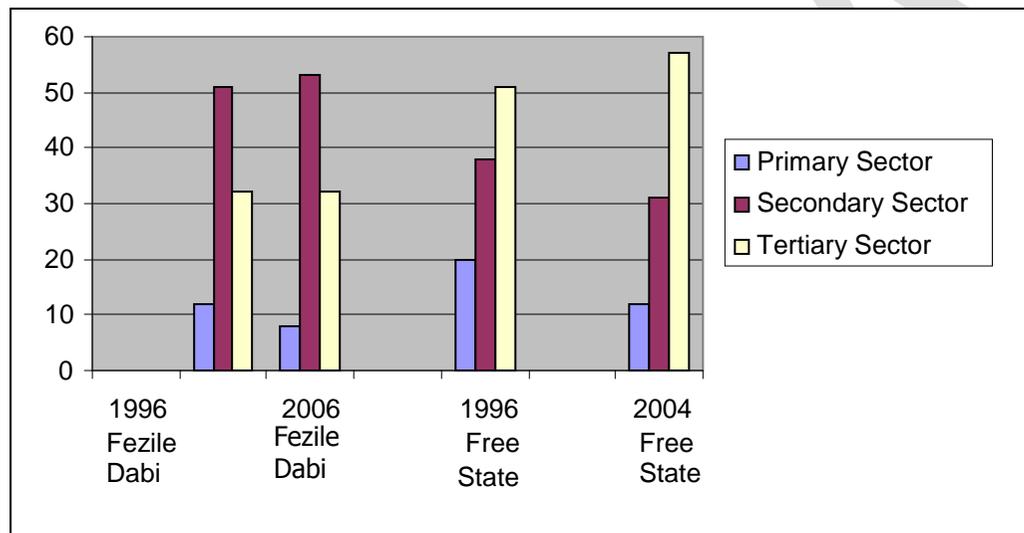
The following should be noted in respect of the sectoral contributions:

- The relative contributions of agriculture have decreased rapidly, more significantly in the District than in the Province. Whilst one should caution against assessing this sector on the information of single years, the declining importance of agriculture in the economies should nevertheless be acknowledged.
- A second important comparison in the data is the importance of manufacturing in the Fezile Dabi region. Almost a quarter of the economy in Fezile Dabi District Municipality depends on manufacturing, where the petro-chemical industry is dominant in Metsimaholo Local Municipality.
- Sectors in which remarkable proportional gains are reported are trade, transport and community services.

B) Relative Economic Contribution

The relative contribution of the District's economy to the economy of the Free State is illustrated in terms of the primary, secondary and tertiary sectors in Figure 3.5.

**Figure 3.5:** Sector Contribution in the economy



Source: GDS of the Free State Province, 2007

Figure 3.5 indicates the relative contribution of the broad economic sectors in Fezile Dabi District Municipality, in comparison with the Free State Province, 1996 and 2004.

The following comments should be made in respect of the above two figures:

- The primary sector (owing to the declining importance of agriculture) declined in Fezile Dabi District Municipality over the period under consideration. The secondary sector stayed more or less the same, while there was an increase in the proportional share of the tertiary sector.
- In comparison with the Free State Province suggests that the economy in Fezile Dabi District Municipality reflects the trends current in the Free State. The primary sector in Fezile Dabi is, however larger than that of the Free State.

C) Main sectors GGP and growth rates

The Fezile Dabi District Municipality economy comprises 53.1% of the tertiary sector, 45.2% of the secondary sector and 1.7% of the primary sector. The economy's Tress index, i.e. diversification level, is 59.1 points out of 100. It shows that the District's economy is relatively dependant on the performance of specific sectors. The economy of Fezile Dabi District Municipality is highly dependant on the manufacturing sector, as it contributes 39.3% to the District's GGP. The service sector is the second largest (19.2%) followed by the trade (15.2%) and financial services (11.6%) sectors.

**Table 3.4:** Fezile Dabi Economic Structure, 2006

Sector	Contribution
Agriculture	0.5%
Services	19.2%
Finance	11.6%
Transport	7.1%
Trade	15.2%
Construction	3.9%
Electricity and Water	3.1%
Manufacturing	38.2%
Mining	1.3%

Sources: Urban Econ 2006

### 3.1.2.5. Economic Growth Potential

An attempt was made to identify sectors that offer economic growth potential based on the analyses conducted. The identification of sectoral potential to grow in the future based on the following three indicators:

- GGP growth rate;
- Employment; and
- Labour productivity growth rate.

**Table 3.5:** *Fezile Dabi main sector growth potential*

Fezile Dabi (2000-2006)				
Main Sectors	GGP Growth Rate	Employment Growth Rate	Productivity Growth Rate	Development Potential
Agriculture	-6.1%	1.3%	-7.3%	Weak
Mining	-6.9%	-4.9%	-2.2%	Weak
Manufacturing	1.3%	-1.2%	2.5%	Medium
Electricity and Water	0.9%	3.6%	-2.6%	Medium
Construction	3.8%	1.4%	2.4%	Strong
Trade	3.3%	2.9%	0.3%	Strong
Transport	5.1%	5.8%	-0.7%	Medium
Financial services	5.6%	9.7%	-3.8%	Medium
Community services	-0.1%	0.2%	-0.3%	Weak

Source: *Urban Econ, 2006*

Table 3.5 indicates the economic growth potential among the main sectors in the Fezile Dabi District Municipality. As highlighted in the last column Table 3.5, the following main sectors in the Fezile Dabi District Municipality have sound potential for growth in the future:

- Construction; and
- Trade.

### **3.1.2.6. Commercial/Industrial Characteristics within Urban Concentrations**

#### **A) Business/Commercial**

The majority of the historically advantaged areas have well defined Central Business Districts although the hierarchical classification varies between the respective Towns.

Central Business Districts (CBD's) are classified in terms of extent, specialised goods offered, level of service provided (higher order vs. lower order), population, Provincial and sub-regional significance, level of service, transport and density of goods and products.

In terms of a hierarchical classification, the respective CBD's can be classified as follows:

- **1<sup>st</sup> Order**
  - Kroonstad
  - Sasolburg
- **2<sup>nd</sup> Order**
  - Heilbron
  - Parys
  - Frankfort
- **3<sup>rd</sup> Order**
  - Viljoenskroon
  - Steynsrus
  - Deneysville
  - Oranjeville
  - Vredefort
  - Edenville
  - Koppies
  - Villiers
  - Cornelia
  - Tweeling

The historically disadvantaged areas have generally poorly defined CBD's and are characterized by the following:

- Poorly defined CBD's;
- Fragmented uses throughout residential areas;
- Businesses along transportation routes; and
- Lower order activities (limited specialized services and limited choice).

### B) Industry

The majority of the industrial areas are located within or in close proximity to historically advantaged areas. Although some light industrial areas have been provided within historically disadvantaged areas, the development thereof is latent.

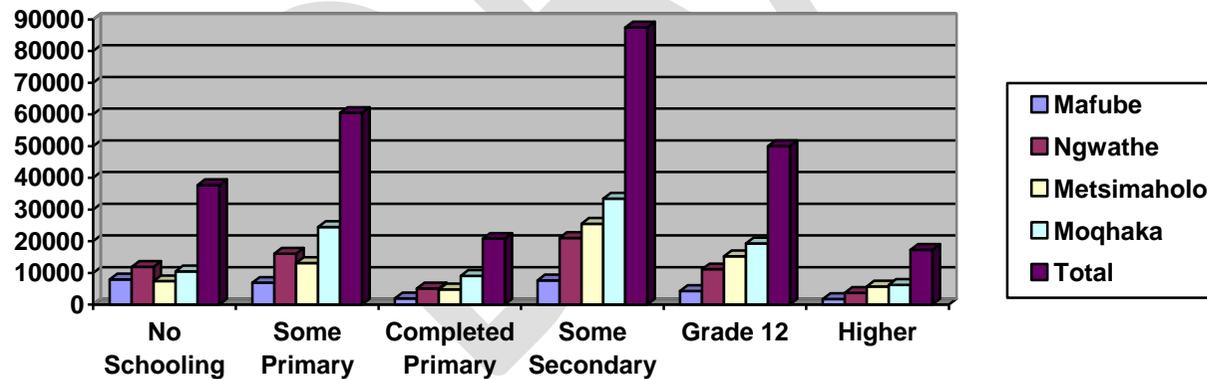
There is a need for industrial land to be developed within Sasolburg and Heilbron with industrial land still available within Villiers, Zamdela, Parys, Koppies, Vredefort, Makwallo and Viljoenskroon.

### 3.1.3. Social Indicators

#### 3.1.3.1. Education (See Map 3)

The level of education also serves as an indicator for development. The level of education indicates the ability of the population to be employed, or to be trained to become employed - in order to earn an income. Furthermore, the level of education also reflects the level of self-worth and self-improvement, reflected by the tendency of higher education. Figure 3.6 indicates the level of education on a local municipal level.

Figure 3.6: Level of Education - Local Municipal Areas, 2002



Source: Demarcation Board 2002

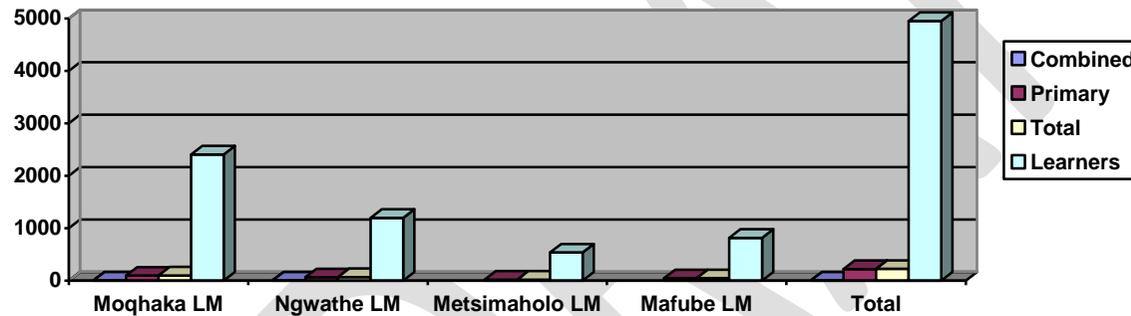
Based on the information as indicated in Figure 3.6, only 25% of the population have Grade 12 or higher education.

Based on a more recent study which was conducted by Global Insight (2007), the following information was obtained:

- That Metsimaholo Local Municipality has the highest literacy level (78.6%), followed by Moqhaka Local Municipality (74.7%), Ngwathe Local Municipality (67.1%) and Mafube Local Municipality (57.8%).
- That the Municipal area with the largest percentage of no schooling is Mafube Local Municipality followed by Ngwathe Local Municipality (8.13%), Metsimaholo Local Municipality (5.02%) and Moqhaka Local Municipality (4.84%). It must also be stated that the Municipal areas of Metsimaholo Local Municipality and Moqhaka Local Municipality performed the best in the Free State Province.

The educational facilities within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality rural area is indicated in Figure 3.7.

**Figure 3.7: Educational Facilities in Rural Areas**



Source: Local Municipal SDF's (2008)

From the above Figure it is evident that there are a large number of rural schools with only an average of 22 learners per school.

With regard to the educational facilities within the urban areas, the information is indicated in Table 3.6.

**Table 3.6: Educational Facilities in Urban Areas**

Category	Moqhaka Local Municipality	Ngwathe Local Municipality	Metsimaholo Local Municipality	Mafube Local Municipality	Total
- Combined	22	10	3	Non-Specified	
- Primary	18	20	20		
- Secondary	10	12	11		
- Secondary (Agricultural)	2	1	-		
- Specialized	2	-	1		
<b>Total</b>	<b>54</b>	<b>43</b>	<b>35</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>150</b>
Learners	34604	29149	29403	14752	107908

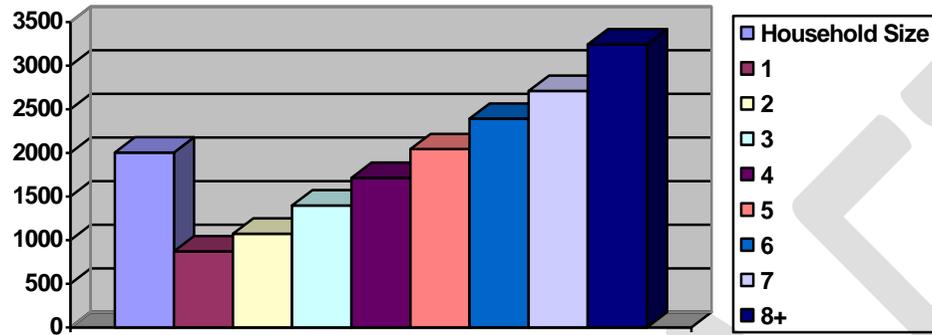
Source: Municipal Spatial Development Framework's (2008)

The average number of learners per school within the urban area is 719.

### 3.1.3.2. Poverty (See Map 4)

The poverty rate is defined as the percentage/ number of people in a household with an income less than the poverty income. Poverty income is defined as the minimum monthly income needed to sustain a household and varies according to the household size: the larger the household, the larger the income required to keep its members out of poverty. Figure 3.8 indicates monthly poverty income per household size for the year 2004.

**Figure 3.8:** Monthly poverty income per household size (R per month) in 2004

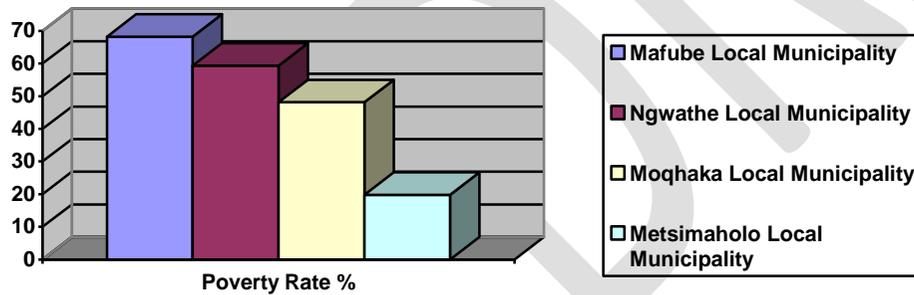


Source: FSGDS Review, 2006 (Global Insight, 2006)

Based on the above criteria, the poverty rate within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality is 45.6%, which is lower than the Free State average of 50%.

The poverty rate per Municipal area is indicated in Figure 3.9.

**Figure 3.9:** Poverty Rate



Source: Global Insight 2007

From the above Figure it is evident that Mafube Local Municipality and Ngwathe Local Municipality have very high poverty rates.

### 3.1.3.3. HIV and AIDS

According to the FSGDS Review, 2006 (Redelinghuys and Pelsler), the prevalence rate of HIV and AIDS amongst pregnant women in the Free State was 29.5% in 2004.

The Fezile Dabi District Municipality has the lowest rate within the Free State with a percentage of 23.8% in 2004.

### 3.1.3.4. Crime Rate

Based on the survey which was conducted by Global Insight, 2006, the crime rate has decreased with 14.21% in Fezile Dabi District Municipality between 2005 and 2006. Notwithstanding the aforementioned, the crime rate is still high with a total of 22617 cases during 2006.

The safety and security facilities within Fezile Dabi District Municipality are indicated in Table 3.7.

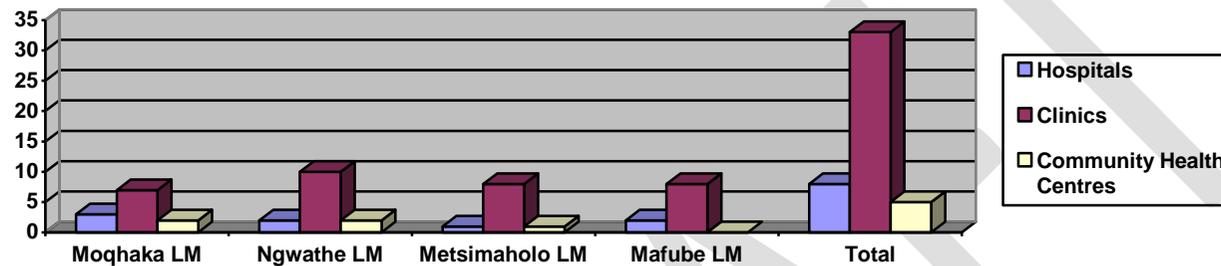
**Table 3.7: Safety and Security Facilities**

Category	Moqhaka Local Municipality	Ngwathe Local Municipality	Metsimaholo Local Municipality	Mafube Local Municipality	Total
- Police Stations • Urban • Rural	7 2	7 -	3 1	4 -	21 3
- Magistrate Offices	2	5	1	2	10
- Correctional Services	5	2	1	1	8
<b>Total</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>14</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>42</b>

### 3.1.3.5. Health Facilities

The health facilities within Fezile Dabi District Municipality are indicated in Figure 3.10.

**Figure 3.10: Health Facilities**



*Municipal SDF's (2008)*

Source:

### 3.1.3.6. Cemeteries

#### ○ **Moqhaka Local Municipality**

- Adequate facilities over the next 10 years in Kroonstad/Maokeng and Brentpark.
- New site to be identified in Rammulotsi and Matlwangtlwang.

#### ○ **Ngwathe Local Municipality**

- New cemetery sites need to be developed in Parys, Tumahole, Kwakwatsi, Mokwallo and Oranjeville.

#### ○ **Metsimaholo Local Municipality**

- New cemetery sites need to be identified in Deneysville and Oranjeville.

#### ○ **Mafube Local Municipality**

- New cemetery sites need to be identified in Villiers, Qalabotjha, Ntswanatsatsi and Mafahlaneng.

### 3.1.3.7. Housing

Types of dwelling per Local Municipality according to information from Stats SA (Community Survey 2007) is summarised in Table 3.8.

**Table 3.8:** *Percentage of types of dwellings per Local Municipality*

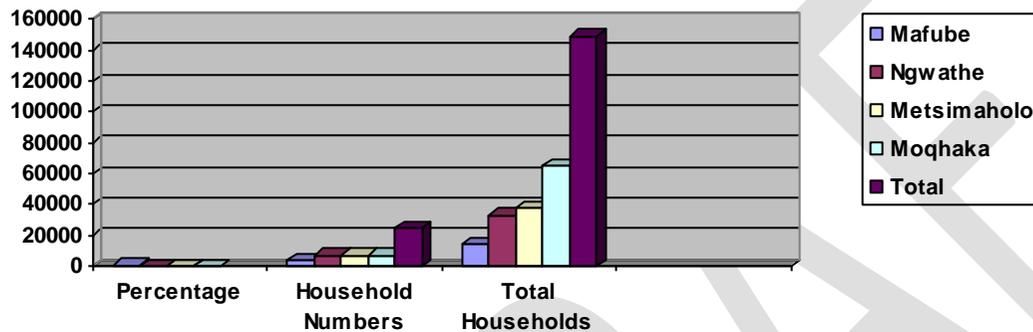
Type of Dwelling	Mafube	Ngwathe	Metsimaholo	Moqhaka
House or brick structure on separate stand or yard	64.7	72.3	74.0	47.0
Traditional dwelling/hut/structure made of traditional materials	4.4	1.4	0.2	0.8
Flat in block of flats	0.3	2.3	5.3	3.0
Town/cluster/semi-detached house (simplex; duplex; triplex)	1.0	0.8	0.4	0.9
House/flat/room in back yard	0.5	1.6	0.4	1.1
Informal dwelling/shack in back yard	6.5	14.6	2.4	4.8
Room/flatlet not in back yard but on shared property	0.6	-	0.12	0.3
Caravan or tent	0.3	-	-	-
Workers hostel	-	-	-	36.4
Private ship/boat	-	-	-	-
Not applicable	0.5	0.1	1.1	0.5
Informal dwelling shack not in backyard	21.2	6.9	16.0	5.3

Source: Community Survey 2007

Based on the information from the above Table, it is evident that there are still a large number of formal houses to be established within the respective Municipalities.

Figure 3.11 indicates the number of households which resides in informal dwellings within the respective Municipalities.

**Figure 3.11: Informal Dwellings**



Source: Community Survey 2007

The conclusions are as follows:

- There is a total of 24 369 (16%) households which still reside in informal dwellings.
- The Municipal area with the highest need, relative to its total households is Mafube Local Municipality, followed by Ngwathe Local Municipality, Metsimaholo Local Municipality and Moqhaka Local Municipality.

### **3.1.4. Infrastructure and Service Provision Overview**

An overview of existing infrastructure and basic service provision is provided based on Statistics South Africa, 2001 and Community Survey 2007 together with information received from the local municipalities. Although this data may not be reflective of the current situation, the data obtained is the only official source of data available at this stage.

The following infrastructure and service delivery parameters were assessed:

- Water Supply;
- Sanitation level;
- Access to electricity;
- Access to refuse removal;
- Access to landlines (telephones); and
- Type of Dwelling.

### 3.1.4.1. Water Supply (See Map 5)

Bulk water supply per Local Municipality according to information from Statistics SA (Community Survey 2007) is summarised in Table 3.9.

**Table 3.9:** Percentage of Water supply per Local Municipality per type of water source

Water Supply	Moqhaka Local Municipality	Ngwathe Local Municipality	Metsimaholo Local Municipality	Mafube Local Municipality
Piped water inside dwelling	32.8	44.0	73.0	43.6
Piped water inside yard	62.0	47.4	16.3	48.5
Piped water from access point outside the yard	2.3	3.3	10.5	3.5
Borehole	2.8	4.2	-	2.4
Spring	-	-	-	-
Dam/pool	-	0.4	-	0.8
River/ stream	-	0.3	-	0.3
Water vendor	-	0.1	-	-
Rain water tank	-	0.1	-	0.6
Other	0.1	0.2	0.2	0.3
<b>% Household with no piped water</b>	<b>2.9%</b>	<b>5.3%</b>	<b>0.2%</b>	<b>4.4%</b>

Source: Community Survey 2007

From the above Table, the conclusions are as follows:

- Metsimaholo Local Municipality has the highest percentage of piped water inside the dwelling;
- The Municipalities with the highest need is Ngwathe Local Municipality and Mafube Local Municipality.

With reference to the Water Services Development Plan (2005) which was compiled for the Fezile Dabi District Municipality, the level of water provision within the District is indicated in Table 3.10.

**Table 3.10: Level of Water Supply**

Category	Metsimaholo LM	Mafube LM	Moqhaka LM	Ngwathe LM
<u>Urban</u>				
Number of households				
Below RDP Standard	30299	12511	31596	29702
%	1768	62	343	132
	6	1	1	0.4
<u>Rural</u>				
Number of households				
Below RDP Standard	3182	2247	10418	5471
%	318	0	1563	766
	10	0	15	14

Source: Local Municipal SDF (2008)

**Note:** RDP Level of Water provision implies access to a communal water tap within a radius of 200m. Distances higher than 200m implies a delivery of the service below RDP standards. Provision of erf connections and water meters are considered to be above RDP standard.

From the above Table, the conclusions are as follows:

- Water provision, in general, seems to be far more thriving than sanitation provision, especially in urban areas.
- Regarding the Moqhaka Region, only 1% of households are provided with water below RDP standard in the urban areas and 15% of households are provided with water below RDP standard in the rural area.

- Again, comparing the different Local Municipalities in the Fezile Dabi Region regarding water provision, it is evident that the Mafube Region has the lowest percentage of urban (1%) and rural (0%) households provided with water below RDP standard. The highest percentage of urban households provided with water below RDP standard, is in the Metsimaholo Region (6%) and the highest percentage of rural households provided with water below RDP standard is in the Moqhaka Region (15%).

Based on the Water Services Development Plan which was compiled by Messrs Makgoka Development Facilitation during October 2010, the situation analysis within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality is indicated in Table 3.11.

**Table 3.11: Water Sanitation Analysis**

Key Area	Mafube Local Municipality	Metsimaholo Local Municipality	Moqhaka Local Municipality	Ngwathe Local Municipality
Population	70,000	154,658	170,522	95,187
No of Households	15,000	37,320	64,898	32,872
Status Quo on Provision of Water Provision	All households within the Municipality receiving water, except new establishments in Frankfort/Cornelia/Villiers/Tweeling.	All households within the Municipality receiving water, except new establishments in Themba Ngubeni.	All households are receiving water, and an additional 4,000 stands in Viljoenskroon will all get water when they become households/dwellings .	The supply meets the water demand in all the established settlements of the Municipality except in the newer establishments in Parys (1,000), Vredefort (1,015) and Heilbron (1,000).
Households receiving water	All households receiving water. Most households receive their water from tap inside yard and dwelling, except new stands in Frankfort/Cornelia/Villiers/Tweeling who get water from communal taps and taps.	All households receiving water. Most households receive their water from tap inside yard and dwelling, except new stands in Themba Ngubeni who get water from communal taps and taps.	All households are receiving water, and an additional 4,000 stands in Viljoenskroon will all get water when they become households/dwellings .	All households receiving water from tap inside dwelling or yard, except the 3,015 newer households in Parys, Vredefort and Heilbron.

<p>Challenges around Water provision</p>	<p>Not collecting enough revenue from water provision – due to high unemployment. Very old water pipes resulting in water losses. No funds to replace old pipes</p>	<p>Plants in Denisville and Orangeville are outdated and operated manually. Overloaded plants capacity. Lack of funds to upgrade infrastructure. Vandalism of water infrastructure that causes blockages of pipes.</p>	<p>No water metering system. Cannot afford to pay for the identified water reading meters. Lack of awareness on the community's side on water use and preservation. Old water pipes. No funds for regular maintenance of infrastructure.</p>	<p>Capacity of Water Plant in Parys too small at 19.2 and pumping above its capacity. Old asbestos pipes in place and need replacing. Plant in Vredefort too small, mainly due the eradication of the bucket system. Plant capacity in Koppies too small and not enough. Significant water losses.</p>
<p>Water provision backlogs</p>	<p>3,957 new households/stands in Frankfort/Cornelius not accessing water from taps in dwelling nor tap inside yard; this is because these stands are new and are currently receiving water from communal taps and tanks.</p>	<p>1,500 new households in Themba Ngubeni access water only from communal stand pipes.</p>	<p>All backlogs have been addressed, except, that of the 4,000 new stands in Viljoenskroon only 2,200 have been provided with water.</p>	<p>1,000 households in Parys without water in dwelling or yard. 1,015 households in Vredefort without water in dwelling or yard. 1,000 households in Heilbron without water in dwelling or yard.</p>
<p>Interventions to address backlogs and challenges</p>	<p>Seeking funds to address the challenges and install dwelling and yard taps for the 3,957 dwellings in Frankfort/Cornelius/Villiers/Tweeling.</p>	<p>Rand Water to assist to train plant operators. Submitted to council plan to address water challenges and to be graded by DWAF. Replacement of asbestos pipes; submitted to council for approval. Prepared business plans to seek</p>	<p>Crafting a Water Infrastructure Master Plan to address the challenges, backlogs and future demand. Applied to DWAF and MIG for funding of efficient water metering system. Plan to use washer system to</p>	<p>Business plan in place to raise funds to address the challenges of over-capacitated plants and old pipes. Received R500, 000 from Rand Water to educate community on water losses.</p>

		funding from DWAF and COGTA.	restrict household water use.	
Water provision achievements	<p>Built a Water Purification Plant in Frankfort, which also supplies Cornelia as well.</p> <p>Constructed Water Reticulation network in Qalabotja</p> <p>Constructed Water Reticulation network in Namahadi.</p> <p>Busy building Water Purification Plant in Villiers (60% complete).</p> <p>Building a Water Purification Plant in Tweeling.</p> <p>Submitting business plans to DWAF and MIG for funding to increase water capacity.</p> <p>Installation of water-flow metres within the Municipality.</p>	<p>No water cuts in the Municipalities.</p> <p>Building 5mega-litre Reservoir in Amelia for R9million</p> <p>Has over 10 Water Reservoirs within different areas of the Municipality.</p> <p>Has over five Water Purification Plants and Water Treatment Plants at various areas within the Municipality.</p>	<p>Provision of water to 2,200 new dwellings in Viljoenskroon.</p> <p>Provision of water to 670 new stands.</p> <p>Provision of water to 329 new stands in Kroonstad, part of Operation Hlasela.</p>	<p>Installed one pump pumping into Reservoir no.4.</p> <p>Boosted 3 pumps at Reservoir no.4.</p> <p>Installed new pipeline from Reservoir no.2 to Sisulu.</p> <p>Built new Reservoir in Edenville and installed new pipes.</p> <p>New borehole in Edenville assisted financially by the District.</p>
Water infrastructure maintenance	Appointed Service Provider to assist with routine pump maintenance of water and sewer infrastructure.	Have water infrastructure maintenance plan, but unable to enforce due to unavailability of fleet. Maintenance is mainly reactive.	No infrastructure maintenance plan, but putting in place a Water Infrastructure Master Plan which will address this maintenance planning.	No maintenance plan in place. Only fix when broken.
Sources of Water (water is drawn from these sources to Purification Plants)	Wilge River Liebenbergvlei River Vaal River	Vaal River Rand Water	Vaal River Rhenoster River Bloemhoek Dam Vals River	Vaal River Koppies Dam
2010/2011 Water Infrastructure	Water Purification Plant in Villiers for R6.5million and 60% complete. Water Reticulation Plant in	Water Reservoir in Amelia for R9million for planned	Budgeted R10-15 million for infrastructure	R3million water provision infrastructure upgrade. Edenville borehole (assisted

Projects	Namahadi for R6million. Water reticulation network in Namahadi for 1714 crf connections.	3,000 households in Moodraai. Upgrade of Water Purification Plant in Refengkgotso to supply Mooiplaats for R17million.	upgrades.	financially by the District Municipality).
Water Service Authority	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

### 3.1.4.2. Sanitation (See Map 6)

The provision of sanitation per Local Municipality according to information from Statistics SA (Community Survey 2007) is summarised in the Table 3.12.

**Table 3.12: Percentage of levels of sanitation per Local Municipality per household**

Sanitation Level	Moqhaka Local Municipality	Ngwathe Local Municipality	Metsimaholo Local Municipality	Mafube Local Municipality
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)	86.2	70.2	87.5	86.1
Flush toilet (with septic tank)	0.5	5.3	0.7	1.9
Dry toilet	0.4	0.5	0.9	3.4
Pit toilet (VIP)	5.9	2.1	0.3	1.2
Pit latrines without ventilation	3.9	6.7	8.7	1.5
Chemical toilet	-	0.2	-	0.3
Bucket toilet	2.1	13.5	1.4	1.4
None	1.0	1.5	0.5	4.3

Pit/Bucket latrine and without sanitation	7.0	21.9	10.6	7.5
---	-----	------	------	-----

Source: Community Survey 2007

The conclusion from Table 3.11 is as follows:

- Although the majority of households are provided with flush toilets within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality, a relative large percentage of households are still dependant upon the bucket system in Ngwathe Local Municipality (21.9%), Metsimaholo Local Municipality (10.6%), Mafube Local Municipality (7.5%) and Moqhaka Local Municipality (7.0%).

Based on the Water Services Development Plan which was compiled by Messrs Makgoka Development Facilitation during October 2010, the sanitation backlogs within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality is indicated in Table 3.13.

**Table 3.13: Sanitation Backlogs**

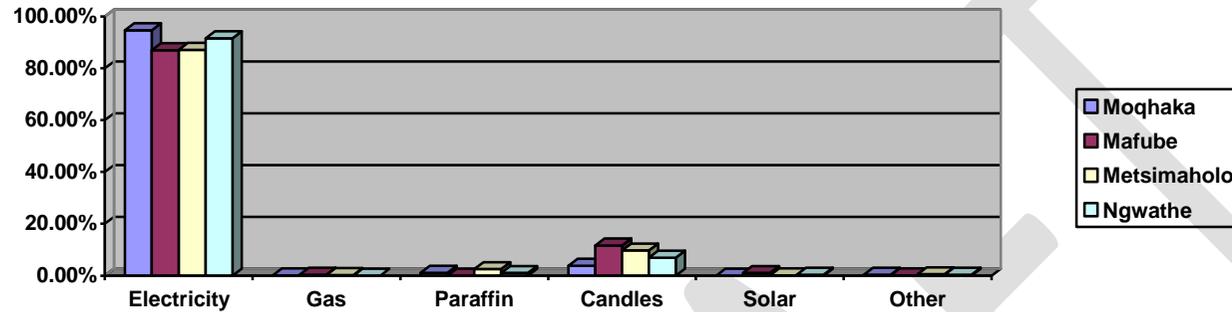
Municipal District Area	Total# Households	Total Existing Backlog	# of Households under Current Projects	Backlog to be addressed (2005 to 2010)	Need (%)
Moqhaka	41852	10193		10193	24.35%
Ngwathe	34764	9262	9295		-0.09%
Metsimaholo	37320	1500			
Mafube	14667	1210	597	613	4.18%
<b>Total</b>		<b>22165</b>	<b>9892</b>	<b>613</b>	

From the above Table it is evident that Moqhaka Local Municipality has the largest backlog, followed by Ngwathe Local Municipality, Metsimaholo Local Municipality and Mafube Local Municipality.

#### **3.1.4.3. Energy Supply (See Map 7)**

Energy usage per Local Municipality according to information from Statistics SA (Community Survey 2007) is summarised in Figures 3.11; 3.12 and 3.13. Energy is primarily supplied by Eskom to the respective Municipalities. In the rural areas Eskom provides directly to the end users whereas in the urban areas, electricity is purchased by the Municipality and then distributed.

**Figure 3.11: Energy/fuel used for lighting**

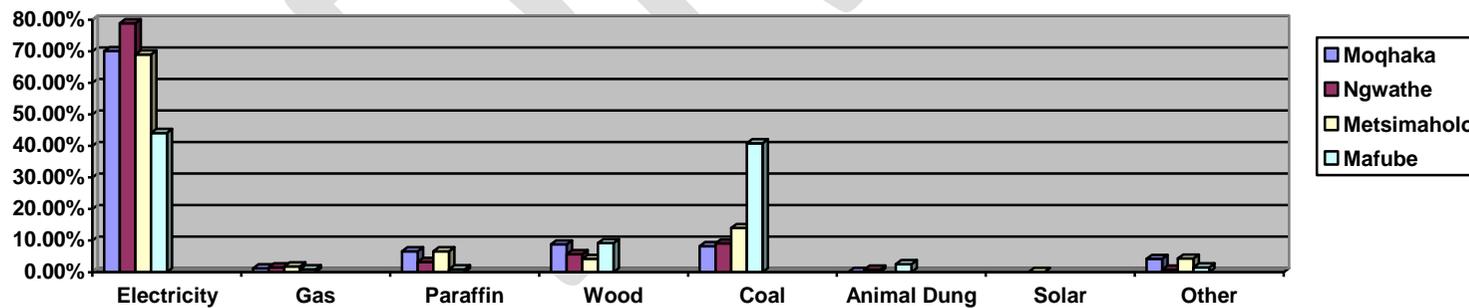


Source: Community Survey 2007

The conclusions are as follows:

- Moqhaka Local Municipality has the highest electricity usage for lightning purposes (94.7%), followed by Ngwathe Local Municipality (91.6%).
- The Fezile Dabi District Municipality is the district where households have the highest access (91.7%) to electricity in the Free State.

**Figure 3.12: Energy/fuel used for heating**

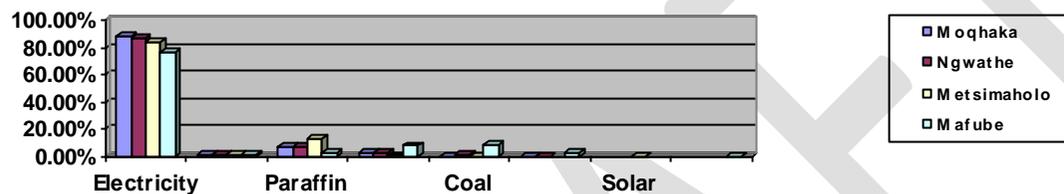


Source: Community Survey 2007

The conclusion is as follows:

- Ngwathe Local Municipality has the highest electricity usage for heating purposes (78.9%), followed by Moqhaka (70.9%) and Metsimaholo (69%).
- Beneficiaries within Mafube Local Municipality is still largely dependant upon coal for heating purposes (40.9%).

**Figure 3.13:** Energy/fuel used for cooking



Source: Community Survey 2007

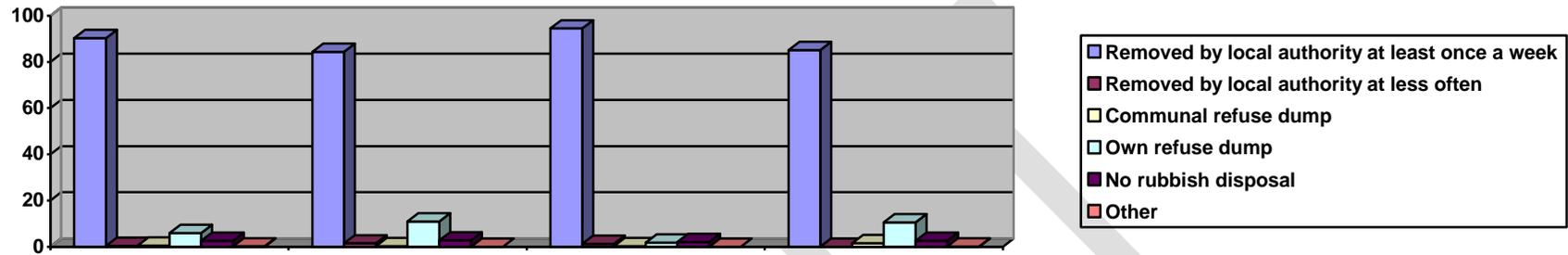
The conclusions are as follows:

- Moqhaka Local Municipality has the highest electricity usage for cooking (88.4%) followed by Ngwathe (86.7%) and Metsimaholo (84.4%).
- The beneficiaries in Mafube Local Municipality also make use of coal (9%) and wood (8.1%) for cooking purposes.
- There are still large percentages (12.9%) of beneficiaries in Metsimaholo Local Municipality which make use of paraffin (source).

#### **3.1.4.4. Refuse removal**

Refuse Removal per Local Municipality according to information from Community Survey 2007 is summarised in the Figure 3.14.

**Figure 3.14:** Refuse removal per Local Municipality per household



Source: Community Survey 2007

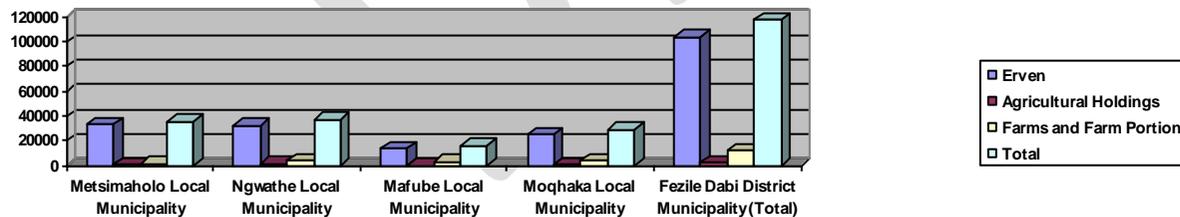
The conclusions are as follows:

- All four Local Municipalities have more than 80% refuse collection at least once a week.
- Metsimaholo Local Municipality has the highest percentage based on the fact that the majority of households are residing within the urban environment.
- In Municipalities where there is a large rural component, the collections are less.

### 3.2. Local Municipal Characteristics

The Fezile Dabi District Municipality comprise of 4 Local Municipalities with a total of 117775 properties as indicated in Figure 3.15.

**Figure 3.15:** Breakdown of Property Type



Source: Department of Land Affairs 2008

From Figure 3.15 it is evident that the largest number of properties is located in Ngwathe Local Municipality (32%), followed by Metsimaholo Local Municipality (30%), Moqhaka Local Municipality (24%) and Mafube Local Municipality (14%).

The total number of erven within urban areas comprise of the largest number (88%), followed by farms (10%) and smallholdings (2%).

The characteristics of each of the respective Local Municipal areas are briefly explained as follows:

### **3.2.1. Moqhaka Local Municipality**

#### **3.2.1.1. Urban Configuration**

Moqhaka Local Municipality is situated in the southern part of the Fezile Dabi District Municipality, and comprise of the following urban concentrations:

Kroonstad/ Maokeng are the centre of a large agriculture community that plays an important role in the economy of the region. Industrial activities subsequently contribute significantly to the districts economy. The Department of Correctional Services and the School of Engineer's Military bases are situated in the town. The urban area is situated adjacent the N1 National Road and located adjacent one of the largest and most important four-way railway junctions in South Africa.

Viljoenskroon/Rammulotsi semi-urban area is located within an area of high agricultural significance. Continuous development and exploitation of the Vaal Reefs Gold Mines adjacent to the Vaal River provides future economic growth potential in this area. The urban area plays a significant role in providing residential opportunities to the adjacent mining activities in the North West Province. The provincial roads P15/1 and P15/2 from Kroonstad to Klerksdorp in the North West Province extend through the area from north to south.

Steynsrus/Matlwangtlwang urban area is situated approximately 45km east of Kroonstad, 92km west of Bethlehem. The major link road between Bethlehem and Kroonstad stretches adjacent to the urban area. The area is located in an area of agricultural significance and mainly provides services in this regard to the surrounding rural areas. More specialised services are rendered by Kroonstad as a large service centre in close proximity. The accessibility of the town, due to the main road and railway line, further influences growth in the area.

In addition to the existing formal urban areas, several residential areas and proclaimed town areas are situated in the Moqhaka Region with reference to Renovaal, Vierfontein and the Vaal Reefs hostel complex and settlement. Renovaal was established during 1974 adjacent the Vaal River with the intention to provide residence in the proximity of the gold mining activities in the North West Province. The town was also later marketed as a leisure residential area with recreation potential adjacent the Renoster and Vaal Rivers. Development of the town is, however, extremely latent and only the proposed first phase of the town was established.

Vierfontein (referred to as “Vierfontein South”) is also a proclaimed town. The area was initially developed to provide residence for workers at the adjacent mine and electricity power station and was owned by Eskom. After mining activities ceased and the power station discontinued, the individual properties were sold and the majority of the inhabitants of Vierfontein are retired residents with a limited number of inhabitants that are employed in Viljoenskroon.

To the north of the town Vierfontein, a sectional title scheme was established that is referred to as “Vierfontein North”. As in the case of Vierfontein, this sectional title scheme also developed to provide residence for workers at the Vierfontein mine and power station, but most of the current inhabitants are also retired. The area was developed by the Dutch Reformed Church who was the initial property owner of the concerned farms.

The Vaal Reefs hostel complex subsequently exists adjacent the Vaal River and in close proximity of Viljoenskroon. The hostels were developed by AngloGold who is the property owner of the concerned farms and provide residence to mine workers of the company. Although mining activities ceased on the Free State side of the Vaal River, the complex still exists and provides housing to approximately 9 000 residents.

### **3.2.1.2. Recreation and Tourism**

- The area is not considered as a primary tourist destination, although the area is increasingly becoming a favourite weekend destination.
- The hunting and guesthouse industries displayed an exceedingly rapid growth the past few years.
- Continuous development and effective marketing resulted in the Stokkiesdraai and Wawelpark recreation and holiday resorts adjacent the Vaal River in the Viljoenskroon area, becoming popular tourist destinations.
- Recreation areas and facilities are further predominantly confined to the urban areas.
- The popular Kroonpark recreation and holiday resort (adjacent to Vals River) in Kroonstad attracts interest throughout the region.
- The Serfontein and Bloemhoek Dams also provide popular recreation possibilities.
- The Koppies area, is becoming well known for various battlefields as tourist attractions, which includes:
  - The R82 Battlefield Route from Kroonstad to Greenlands, including the Rooiwal Battlefield, has been officially established;
  - Kroonstad Concentration Camp Cemetery; and
  - Sarel Cillier’s Farm.

### **3.2.1.3. Conservation**

- **Natural Resources**
  - Natural resources principally relate to productive soils of agricultural significance, which are the most prominent in the Sasolburg/Parys region.
  - The tourism and agricultural sectors are directly dependent on the sustainable use and management of these natural resources.

Natural resources relating to mining are restricted to:

- Sand winning activities along the Vaal River and Vals Rivers.
- Limited alluvial diamond exploration adjacent the Vaal River.
- Diamond deposits are present in the vicinity of Kroonstad and have previously been mined at the Lace and Voorspoed diamond mines.
- Gold deposits at the Vaal Reefs mine in the Viljoenskroon District.
- Coal deposits in the Vierfontein area have largely been exploited and mining activities have been apprehended – subject to thorough investigations, abandoned ash dumps could be utilised for brick making purposes.

The Vaal, Vals and Renoster Rivers, including a series of weirs and smaller dams, are prominent water sources in the region.

○ **Conservation**

As previously indicated, environmentally sensitive areas mostly include riparian properties adjacent to the major rivers in the area as well as the respective series of dams. Dams include:

- A series of weirs in the Vaal River;
- A series of weirs in the Renoster River;
- A series of weirs in the Vals River (dams include the Serfontein, Barend Wessels and Strydom Dams) in the vicinity of Kroonstad and Steynsrus; and
- Conservation of the area below Strydom Dam is evident where archeological findings such as artefacts are present.

**3.2.1.4. Regional Infrastructure**

**A) *Railway***

- The main Bloemfontein/Gauteng railway line stretches through the region and plays a significant role in linking the mining industries of Kroonstad and Sasolburg with Gauteng and Bloemfontein.
- The railway line additionally transports most of the agricultural products, especially maize, from the area. Several silos (and smaller stations with silos) are established in the region.
- The railway line linking Kroonstad with Klerksdorp in the North West Province has been closed and now only reached up to Vierfontein.
- The industrial area of Viljoenskroon and the Steynsrus urban area are serviced by the main Potchefstroom / Klerksdorp and Bethlehem railway line that stretches through the region and plays a significant role in linking the North West Province via Kroonstad to Bethlehem and further east to KwaZulu-Natal.

## **B) Roads**

The well developed character of the region is a direct result of it being serviced by means of a strategically important road network. The most significant of these arterials are identified as the:

- N1 National Road linking the area with Gauteng and central Free State.
- R59 linking Sasolburg, Parys and Viljoenskroon / Orkney to the North West Province.
- R76 linking North West via Viljoenskroon, Kroonstad, Steynsrus and Lindley to Bethlehem and KwaZulu-Natal.
- R34 serves as link road from Kroonstad via Heilbron and Frankfort with the eastern areas of Gauteng (Heidelberg, Nigel, etc.).
- R79 between Viljoenskroon and Vierfontein.

Roads on which Hazardous Chemicals are currently being transported:

- N1: Sasolburg → Kroonstad → Bloemfontein
- N1 & R34: Sasolburg → Kroonstad → Welkom
- R76 linking North West via Viljoenskroon, Kroonstad, Steynsrus and Lindley to Bethlehem and KwaZulu-Natal

## **C) Airfields**

An existing airfield is located in Kroonstad.

### **3.2.2. Ngwathe Local Municipality**

#### **3.2.2.1. Urban Configuration**

Ngwathe Local Municipality is situated in the northern part of the Fezile Dabi District, District Municipality Region, and comprise of the following urban concentrations:

Parys/Tumahole urban area is situated adjacent to the Vaal River that serves as the border between the Free State and the North West Province. The unique nature and environmental assets of Parys present an exceptional tourism potential.

Vredefort/Mokwallo area is located approximately 50km west of Sasolburg. The former N1 primary access route between Kroonstad and Parys extends through Vredefort.

Heilbron/Phiritona urban area is located approximately 53km south of Sasolburg. The primary access route between Sasolburg and the Eastern Free State runs adjacent to Heilbron. The Bethlehem/Vereeniging railway line additional links the industries of Heilbron to the Gauteng area. Heilbron serves as specialised economic hub focussing on agricultural activities and related manufacturing (Clover SA, Simba).

Koppies/Kwawatsi is situated approximately 70km south of Sasolburg. Other larger centres such as Vereeniging and Vanderbijlpark are all within 90km from Koppies. The strategic national railway from the Western Cape to Gauteng stretches through Koppies. A large number of the inhabitants are also employed in the Sasolburg area. Kwawatsi can thus be labelled as a satellite residential town to the surrounding industrial areas. Koppies serve as a small rural centre, and are characterized by a number of irrigation schemes.

Edenville/Ngwathe urban area is situated approximately 42km north-east of Kroonstad and 40km south-west of Heilbron. Other towns like Steynsrus, Lindley, Koppies and Petrus Steyn are all within 50km from Edenville. Edenville serves as a smaller rural area.

### **3.2.2.2. Recreation and Tourism**

- Improvements and upgrading of the battlefields were recently endeavoured.
- Other sites of significant value are the Vredefortweg Concentration Camp Cemetery (Koppies District).
- As a result of the Boer Matabeli War, Kwantitise Battlefield, also known as the Vegkop Battlefield (Heilbron area), is considered as a significant tourist attraction.
- The recently established Francolin Creek Conservancy (between Heilbron and Frankfort on the R34 Road) and Ghoya Africa Conservancies comprise, amongst other, a wine route, guests houses and farm restaurants and is becoming an increasingly popular tourist attraction.

### **3.2.2.3. Conservation**

#### ***o Natural Resources***

Natural resources relating to mining are restricted to:

- Sand wining activities along the Vaal River;
- Limited alluvial diamond exploration adjacent the Vaal River;
- Although vast portions of the region are underlain by coal, the depth thereof implies that mining is at present not financially viable;
- Granite formations in the Parys area;
- Bentonite deposits in Koppies area; and
- Diamond deposits are present in the vicinity of Kroonstad and have previously been mined at the Voorspoed diamond area. A portion of the mining area is situated in Ngwathe region and a portion in the Mophaka region to the west thereof. Redevelopment of the mining area at the Voorspoed Mine is presently underway by the De Beers.

#### ***o Conservation***

- Dams include a series of weirs in the Vaal River in the vicinity of Parys and the Koppies, Weltevrede and Rooipoort Dams in the vicinity of Koppies.
- The latter plays a strategic role in the Koppies irrigation scheme, providing water for irrigation purposes to a large number of plots.

- Although extremely environmentally sensitive areas are located in the study area, the Koppies Dam Nature Reserve and the newly established private nature reserve at Rooipoort Dam are the only official conservation areas.
- The Vaal River forms the northern boundary of the area, which also serves as the boundary between the Free State and Gauteng and North West Province. Other prominent topographical features include the Vredefort Dome, a fascinating exposure of ancient granites emerging from the thick cover of the later karoo sediments. The form of the dome consists of a central cone of granite surrounded by concentric ridges of quartzite belonging to the Witwatersrand System. The Renoster River also drains through the region and is dammed up in the vicinity of koppies in a series of dams namely Weltevrede, Rooipoort and Koppies dams. The above rivers together with the respective dams are prominent water sources for agricultural purposes in the region.

#### **3.2.2.4. Regional Infrastructure**

##### **A) Rail**

- The main Bloemfontein/Gauteng railway line stretches through the region and plays a significant role in linking the mining industries of Kroonstad and Sasolburg with Gauteng and Bloemfontein.
- The Dover/Vredefort railway line extends through the region. The Parys station is situated on a branch line and further expansion is not envisaged. The railway line limits urban integration and access to the industrial area of Parys while it causes the town to develop in a ribbon shape.
- The industrial area of Vredefort used to be serviced by means of a siding that links with the main railway line of Dover station. The siding is unfortunately no longer operational to Vredefort and the station buildings, since it is not in use, fell to vandalism.

##### **B) Roads**

The major provincial road network is generally tarred and provides sufficient accessibility within the region.

The most significant of these arterials are identified as the:

- N1 national road linking the area with Gauteng and Central Free State.
- R59 linking Sasolburg, Parys and Viljoenskroon/Orkney to the North West Province.
- R57 linking the industrial areas of Heilbron with Sasolburg and subsequently linking the eastern Free State and KwaZulu-Natal via Sasolburg with Gauteng Province.
- R34 serves as link road from Kroonstad via Heilbron and Frankfort with the eastern areas of Gauteng (Heilberg, Nigel, etc).
- The strategic location of Parys as an important link between North West and the Free State Provinces, necessitates further long term road planning that is closely related to the need for a link from KwaZulu-Natal to the North West Province.

##### **C) Airfields**

Airfields are located in Heilbron and Parys.

### **3.2.3. Metsimaholo Local Municipality**

#### **3.2.3.1. Urban Configuration**

Metsimaholo Local Municipality is situated in the northern part of the Fezile Dabi District, and comprise of the following urban concentrations:

Sasolburg/Zamdela is located in the heart of worldly renowned coalfields. This modern and predominantly industrial town is further located in close proximity (20km) to the nationally well-known industrial areas of Vereeniging/Vanderbijlpark. Apart from the internationally known SASOL “oil from coal refinery”, a vast number of by-products including olefins, waxes, alcohols, tar products, inorganic chemicals, rubber, gases, plastics, fertilizers, etc are manufactured in the area.

Deneysville / Refengkgotso urban area is situated in the north-eastern section of the Metsimaholo Region, approximately 36km east of Sasolburg and 350km north-east of Bloemfontein. Industrial activities are exclusively related to the boating industry. The town’s close proximity to the coal mining and industrial activities in Sasolburg and its nearby location to the large industrial complexes of Vereeniging and Vanderbijlpark, definitely and perhaps negatively, influence economic activities in Deneysville. The strong recreational character of the town further enhances this phenomenon. The largest number of the inhabitants of Refengkgotso is employed in Sasolburg and the adjacent industrial complexes of Vereeniging and Vanderbijlpark. Refengkgotso can thus be labelled as a typical satellite residential town to the surrounding industrial areas. These factors contribute to the relatively low level of economic activity in the Deneysville area.

The Oranjeville / Metsimaholo urban area is located on the riparian of the Vaal Dam in close proximity to the northern boundary of the Free State Province. The area is accessible by road and within 55km from Sasolburg, Vereeniging, Frankfort, Heilbron and Villiers. Although the prominent economic sector of the area is agriculture, it is strategically situated from a recreation and tourism point of view, as the town is bound on three sides by the Vaal Dam and located in close proximity to the Gauteng.

The Vaal River and Vaal Dam form the northern boundary of the area, which also serve as the boundary between the Free State and Gauteng Province.

#### **3.2.3.2. Recreation and Tourism**

- The hunting and guesthouse industries displayed an exceedingly rapid growth the past few years.
- The Vaal Dam and the Vaal River Barrage are key recreational areas both for permanent residents and for weekend visitors.
- Power boating, angling and shoreline recreational activities are of significant economic value and as such may be influenced by water quality changes.
- Although public access to the Barrage is extremely limited, access is provided at recreational areas such as Riverside Beach Club, Eligwa Boat Club, Emfuleni Park and Abrahamsrust, four boat clubs at Deneysville, as well as the Riverside Sun, which offers several river-based recreational activities.
- Emfuleni Park and Abrahamsrust provide very popular public slipways for boat launching.

- Apart from Abrahamsrust, most of the resorts are situated on the Gauteng side of the Vaal River indicating possibilities for future development to provide for similar facilities on the Free State side.
- Three scenic routes were recently identified as having tourism potential, although upgrading thereof is a prerequisite. Two thereof run virtually parallel to the Vaal River in the Koepel area and comprise of extreme beauty, unique topography and landscape features.

The routes also provide in some instances access to the Vaal River and are identified as:

- The Koepel Scenic Route (Sections of Roads S 264, 212, 80 & 713).
- The Vaal Eden Scenic Route (Sections of Roads S 1052 & 171).
- Roads S 159 and sections of Road R 716 (to Jim Fouché Resort) providing relatively good access to various tourist destinations along the Vaal Dam.
- Although other major recreational activities revolve around the Vaal Dam, the continuous variation in the water level hampers development thereof to a certain extent.
- The Jim Fouché holiday resort is located adjacent the Vaal Dam between Oranjeville and Villiers.
- This resort provides accommodation and caters for water related recreational activities.

### **3.2.3.3. Conservation**

#### ○ ***Natural Resources***

- Exceedingly prominent coal reserves are located within the Municipal area, which makes large areas unavailable for agriculture.
- Large areas within the Sasolburg District, in close proximity to the Vaal River, are utilised for coal mining.
- The continuation of the coal industry has, of late, seriously been reconsidered, as the transportation of earth gas to Sasolburg is becoming a more viable option.
- The latter will naturally determine the pulse of current and future coal mining in the area.
- Other natural resources principally relate to productive soils of agricultural significance, which are the most prominent in the Sasolburg/Parys area.
- The tourism and agricultural sectors are directly dependent on the sustainable use and management of these natural resources.
- The most serious threats to soil resources are erosion, compaction, acidification, salination, and infestation by weeds and pathogens. Other natural resources relating to mining are restricted to:
  - Sand winning activities along the Vaal River; and
  - Limited alluvial diamond exploration adjacent the Vaal River.

### **3.2.3.4. Regional Infrastructure**

#### **A) Rail**

- Passenger service from East London through Bloemfontein, Kroonstad, Sasolburg towards Johannesburg.
- The railway line is predominantly utilised by Sasol for industrial purposes.
- No commuter service is provided to the Greater Sasolburg community although a need for affordable public transportation does exist, especially in the Harry Gwala (Leitrim) extension.

#### **B) Roads**

The well developed character of the region is a direct result of it being serviced by means of a strategically important road network. The most significant of these arterials are identified as the:

- N1 National road linking the area with Gauteng and central Free State.
- N3 National road, stretching through the eastern section of the area.
- R59 linking Sasolburg, Parys and Viljoenskroon / Orkney to the North West Province.
- R57 linking the industrial areas of Heilbron with Sasolburg and subsequently linking the Eastern Free State and KwaZulu-Natal via Sasolburg with the Gauteng Province. Although the regional network seems adequate in terms of its provision of access, certain sections thereof require upgrading.
- The Road and Transport Planning Directorate prepared a bridge emergency plan which provided emergency and alternative routes, should bridges be washed away during flood periods.

### **3.2.4. Mafube Local Municipality**

#### **3.2.4.1. Urban Configuration**

Mafube Local Municipality is situated in the north eastern part of the Fezile Dabi District Municipality Region and comprise of the following urban areas:

Frankfort/Namahadi area is situated 55km east of Heilbron and approximately 120km south east of Sasolburg. The R34 provincial road from Kroonstad to the Natal Province extends adjacent to the town. The Wilge River stretches adjacent to the town from south to the Vaal Dam in the north. Frankfort, although mainly an agricultural related town, does provide certain industrial growth potential. The industrial growth potential is mainly agricultural orientated. A dairy industry of regional importance is located in the town.

Tweeling/Mafahlaeneng is located approximately 150km east of Sasolburg. Primary agricultural activities include sheep and cattle farming, maize and sunflower seed production.

Villiers/ Qalabotjha are situated on the banks of the Vaal River, adjacent to the N3 National Road between Gauteng and Durban. Villiers is predominantly agricultural orientated where products such as maize, sunflower, wheat, grain, sorghum, meat and dairy products are produced. Villiers functions as the main concentration point for products in the district from where it is directly exported. The grain silos in Villiers, together with other grain silos in the district have a storage capacity of 273 000 tons.

Cornelia/ Ntswanatsatsi is situated 40km east of Frankfort, 160km east of Sasolburg and 32km south east of Villiers. The town is situated adjacent the R103 secondary road between Warden and Villiers. The town is located in an area of agricultural significance and mainly provides services in this regard to the surrounding rural area.

The Vaal River and Vaal Dam form the northern boundary of the area, which also serves as the boundary between the Free State and Gauteng Province. The Vaal Dam, often referred to as the Highveld's Inland Sea, together with the Vaal River are the most prominent topographical features in the region. This vast expanse of water covers some 300 square kilometres. It serves as Gauteng's principal source of potable water and is a popular water sports and water related adventure venue. The Wilge and Liebenbergsvlei Rivers also drain from south to the Vaal Dam in the north.

#### **3.2.4.2. Recreation and Tourism**

- The hunting and guesthouse industries displayed an exceedingly rapid growth the past few years.
- The Vaal Dam is a key recreational area both for permanent residents and for weekend visitors. Power boating, angling and shoreline recreational activities are of significant economic value and as such may be influenced by water quality changes.
- Although other major recreational activities revolve around the Vaal Dam, the continuous variation in the water level hampers development thereof to a certain extent. The Jim Fouché holiday resort is located adjacent the Vaal Dam between Oranjeville and Villiers (on the R716 road). The resort provides accommodation and caters for water related recreational activities.
- The recently established Franklin Creek Conservancy (Between Heilbron and Frankfort on the R43 road) comprises amongst other a wine route, guesthouses and farm restaurant and is becoming an increasingly popular tourist attraction.
- Two scenic roads were identified in the region namely sections of roads R716 (north of the Vaal Dam) and R159 (south of the Vaal Dam to Jim Fouché Resort) providing relatively good access to various sections of the Vaal Dam.

#### **3.2.4.3. Conservation**

##### **○ *Natural Resources***

- Natural resources principally relate to productive soils of agricultural significance.
- The tourism and agricultural sectors are directly dependent on the sustainable use and management of these natural resources.
- Other natural resources relating to mining are restricted to sand winning activities along the Vaal River.

- **Conservation**

- Sections of the recently established *Franklin Creek Conservancy* (Between Heilbron and Frankfort on the R43 road) are situated in the region.

#### 3.2.4.4. **Regional Infrastructure**

##### **A) Rail**

- The main Vereeniging/Bethlehem railway line stretches through the region and plays a significant role in linking the Vaal Triangle and Gauteng with KwaZulu-Natal.
- This line services the industrial area of Villiers, Frankfort and Tweeling.
- No railway line serves Cornelia. Railway lines additionally transport most of the agricultural products, especially maize, from the area.
- Several silos (and smaller stations with silos) are established in the region.

##### **B) Roads**

- The well-developed character of the region is a direct result of it being serviced by means of a strategically important road network.
- The most significant of these arterials are identified as the:
  - N3 National road, stretching through the eastern section of the area.
  - R34 serves as link road from Kroonstad via Heilbron and Frankfort with the eastern areas of Gauteng (Heidelberg, Nigel, etc.).
  - S 716 north of the Vaal Dam, linking Oranjeville with Villiers.
  - R159 south of the Vaal Dam, via Jim Fouché Resort, linking Deneysville with Frankfort.
  - R26 linking Frankfort via Tweeling with Reitz and ultimately with Bethlehem.

Roads on which Hazardous Chemicals are currently being transported:

- R716 : Sasolburg → Deneysville → Villiers → KwaZulu-Natal
- R57 & 34: Sasolburg → Heilbron → Frankfort → KwaZulu-Natal

The Directorate of Roads Planning prepared a bridge emergency plan which provided emergency and alternative routes, should bridges be washed away during flood periods.

**C) Airfields**

An existing airfield is located within Frankfort.

**3.3. Agricultural Development (See Map 8 and 9)**

The agricultural potential and usage of the District Municipality is indicated in Table 3.14.

**Table 3.14: Agricultural Development**

Types	Moghaka LM		Ngwathe LM		Metsimaholo LM		Mafube LM		Total	
	Ha	%	Ha	%	Ha	%	Ha	%	Ha	%
- Area unavailable for Agriculture	29081	22	39543	30	23549	18	41245	30	133418	4
- Area present under cultivation	452610	31	527110	36	194096	13	289927	20	1463743	43
- Area available for cultivation	1039	1	8605	10	9954	12	65236	77	84834	2
- Area present under grazing	425270	25	582142	34	234901	14	480192	27	1722505	51
<b>Total</b>	<b>908000</b>	<b>27</b>	<b>1157400</b>	<b>34</b>	<b>462500</b>	<b>14</b>	<b>876600</b>	<b>25</b>	<b>3404500</b>	<b>100</b>

Source: South Africa Land Cover

From the above Table, the conclusions are as follows:

- Ngwathe Local Municipality comprise of the largest rural area (34%), followed by Moqhaka Local Municipality (27%), Mafube Local Municipality (25%) and Metsimaholo Local Municipality (14%).
- Of the total agricultural land (3404500ha), the majority (51%) is being used for grazing, followed by areas under cultivation (43%), areas unavailable for agriculture (4%), and areas available for cultivation (2%).
- Of the areas unavailable for agriculture, Ngwathe (30%) and Mafube Local Municipality (30%) have the most, followed by Moqhaka Local Municipality (22%) and Metsimaholo Local Municipality (18%).
- Ngwathe Local Municipality (36%), followed by Moqhaka Local Municipality (31%), Mafube Local Municipality (20%) and Metsimaholo Local Municipality (13%) have the most land under cultivation.
- Mafube Local Municipality (77%), followed by Metsimaholo Local Municipality (12%), Ngwathe Local Municipality Local Municipality (10%) and Moqhaka Local Municipality (1%) have the most land available for cultivation.
- Ngwathe Local Municipality (34%), followed by Mafube Local Municipality (27%), Moqhaka Local Municipality (25%) and Metsimaholo Local Municipality (14%) have the most land which is being utilised for grazing.

From the above analysis it can be conducted that the Fezile Dabi District Municipality is well utilised in terms of agricultural activities.

### **3.4. Land Reform**

The process of land redistribution in terms of the respective programmes from the Department of Land Affairs occurs throughout the Fezile Dabi District Municipality.

The respective programme which is being implemented within the District Municipality involves the following:

- Land Redistribution and development projects (LRAD);
- Commonages; and
- Settlement Land Acquisition Grant (SLAG).

### **3.5. Geology**

The Fezile Dabi District Municipality is underlain by a number of different geological types of which mud stone comprise the largest area, followed by shale and a variety of types along the Vaal River (granite, sedimentary, dolomite, andesite).

From **Map 10 and 11** it is evident that a large area has a low environmental sensitivity, primarily owing to the occurrence of mineral deposits.

### **3.6. Land Audit (See Map 12 - Annexure D)**

A Land Audit study was conducted for the Fezile Dabi District Municipality, by the Department of Land Affairs and completed during December 2008.

Although the above document has not formally been accepted by the Fezile Dabi District Municipality, some of the salient conclusions are as follows:

- The majority of Municipal Provincial and National Land Ownership are located within existing urban areas. A large number of these stands are being used for residential purposes, and have not yet been registered in the name of the household occupant.
- Very few farms and smallholdings being owned by the Municipality of which the majority is located directly adjacent to the existing urban areas. These areas are usually being used for the purposes of commonage or small scale farming.

## **CHAPTER 4: DEVELOPMENT OPPORTUNITIES AND CONSTRAINTS**

### **4. DEVELOPMENT OPPORTUNITIES AND CONSTRAINTS**

Deriving from the Situation Analysis (Chapter 3), a number of development opportunities and constraints have been identified which will have an impact on the spatial structuring of the Fezile Dabi District Municipality Spatial Development Framework.

#### **4.1. Development Opportunities**

- There are a large number of urban concentrations (15), which strengthen the functionality and linkages within the District;
- There are numerous areas of tourism and agricultural potential in the District;
- Accessibility to the District is good by way of National-and Provincial Roads;
- The District have rich natural resources which will benefit the establishment of work opportunities;
- With the diversity of natural resources, conservation and tourism the potential to compliment these primary activities is extensive;
- The District is located in close proximity to Gauteng, which has the largest population, commercial and services sector in South Africa. Accessibility to higher order markets, services and specialised facilities are within reach;
- In view of the large agricultural and tourism sector, the opportunity exists to diversify and to provide complimentary and supporting activities;
- There are a number of urban areas where industrial stands is available;
- Electricity provision within the District is good.

## **4.2. Development Constraints**

- Urban Concentrations is not well defined in terms of functionality;
- Unemployment is high at 33.6%;
- Tourism and agricultural potential is not fully utilized;
- Large land parcels adjacent to the Vaal River is sterilized owing to mining activities; which makes public accessibility to these natural resources difficult;
- The housing need in the District is high at  $\pm$  16000 units;
- The process of Land Reform is slow, in view of the large underutilized parcels of agricultural land;
- The literacy level of the population is low;
- The poverty levels is high, especially in Mafube and Ngwathe Local Municipalities;
- HIV and Aids levels is high at 23.8%;
- The crime rate is high;
- There is a need for a number of new cemeteries and other social services;
- Water supply in Ngwathe and Mafube Local Municipality need to be improved;
- There is a backlog of proper sanitation in Ngwathe, Metsimaholo and Mafube Local Municipality;
- Roads need to be upgraded; and
- Shortage of land for housing in Metsimaholo.

## **CHAPTER 5: PROVINCIAL AND LOCAL SPATIAL DIRECTIVES**

### **5. PROVINCIAL SPATIAL DIRECTIVES**

In terms of the Free State Growth and Development Strategy (2005) and the Free State Spatial Development Framework, a number of structuring elements have been identified which has spatial impact within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality Spatial Development Framework.

#### **5.1. Free State Growth and Development Strategy (2005-2014)**

In terms of the Free State Growth and Development Strategy (2005-2014), the following four Provincial priority areas were identified:

- Economic Growth, Development and Employment;
- Social and Human Development;
- Justice and Crime Prevention; and
- Efficient Governance and Administration.

Each of the above Provincial priorities, linked to the spatial implications for Fezile Dabi District Municipality, is outlined as follows:

### **5.1.1. Economic Growth , Development and Empowerment**

#### **A) Expanding the manufacturing sector in key sub-sectors**

The emphasis in this sector will be on supporting high-value goods such as petro-chemicals (including bio-fuels) and jewellery. Within the framework of high-value goods, extensive experimentation and innovative partnerships will be created with national and provincial research institutions potentially to grow economic activities of this nature. Further emphasis will be on supporting initiatives in respect of the manufacturing of machinery (especially for the agricultural sector), as well as in supporting initiatives in respect of leather tanning and finishing and agri-business. The programmes to address this priority are as follows:

- Beneficiation of Agricultural Products
  - o Biodiesel – Fezile Dabi
  - o Maize/Wheat – Fezile Dabi
  - o Potatoes – Fezile Dabi
- Beneficiation of Petro-chemicals
  - o Sasolburg
- High Value Products as well as Innovation and Experimentation
  - o Sasolburg
- Mass Produced Goods
  - o Kroonstad, Viljoenskroon and Heilbron

#### **B) Diversification of Agricultural Development**

The programme to address this priority is as follows:

- Diversify Agricultural Products
  - o Moqhaka
- Introduce High-Value Crops
  - o Moqhaka

### **C) Develop Tourism**

The emphasis in respect of tourism will be to optimise the benefits available from this sector of the economy in the Free State. More specifically, the weekend tourism market for the north and northern-eastern Free State will be marketed explicitly. Emphasis will fall on nature tourism and heritage tourism so as to ensure that the Maluti-Drakensburg Transfronteir Park and the Vredefort Dome are prioritised and marketed in an efficient manner. The programmes to address this priority are as follows:

- Develop and Increase Tourism Products
  - o Vredefort Dome
  - o Weekend tourism in Parys and Sasolburg
- Develop Transport Distribution Hubs
  - o Along N1 and N3
- **Enabling Strategies**
  - ❖ Provide Adequate Economic Infrastructure Development  
Settlements and municipalities identified as areas of high economic potential will be priorzed for economic infrastructure. Furthermore, the emphasis will be on road infrastructure as the Free State is highly dependent on transport.
    - o Facilitate advanced ICT infrastructure in Sasolburg and Parys (linked to tourism).
    - o Upgrade and maintain road infrastructure in Fezile Dabi (tourism areas).
    - o Supply bulk water and electricity infrastructure in Sasolburg (potential for high-value goods).
    - o Establish development zones and corridors as well as urban nodes in areas with high development potential (Metsimaholo).

### **5.1.2. Social and Human Development**

#### **A) Improve Basic Services and Housing**

Overall basic services and housing will be provided to ensure a more sustainable environment, better health, and a foundation for economic activity. Although the focus will be on addressing the existing backlogs, specific attention will be given to informal settlements. In addition to the capital expenditure, systems for the provision of free basic service should also be developed. The programmes to address this priority are as follows:

- ❖ Providing Housing
  - o Ngwathe
  - o Metsimaholo
  - o Moqhaka

- ❖ Eradiate Bucket System
  - Ngwathe
- ❖ Provide Water
  - Metsimaholo
  - Moqhaka
  - Ngwathe
- ❖ Provide Electricity
  - Metsimaholo
  - Moqhaka

## **B) Improving Education and Educational Services and Skills**

The emphasis in this regard will be on improving the quality of education, access to educational facilities, ABET programmes, and ensuring the development of an adequate educational infrastructure to address the needs of a knowledge-based global economy. The programmes to address this priority are as follows:

- ❖ Implement Adult Literacy and Numeracy
  - Moqhaka
  - Ngwathe
- ❖ Provide ABET
  - Moqhaka
  - Ngwathe
- ❖ Implement Skills Development
  - Moqhaka
  - Ngwathe
  - Metsimaholo
- ❖ Implement ECD
  - Moqhaka
  - Metsimaholo
- ❖ Provide Education Infrastructure
  - Moqhaka
  - Metsimaholo

- ❖ Upgrade, Rehabilitate and Renovate Education Infrastructure and Facilities
  - Fezile Dabi
- ❖ Provide Transport for Farm Schools
  - Fezile Dabi
- ❖ Provide Accommodation for Leavers from Non-Viable Farm Schools
  - Fezile Dabi
- ❖ Implement Schools Nutrition Programmes
  - Moqhaka
  - Ngwathe

### **C) Improving Social Development Services**

Although economic growth is envisaged as the main vehicle for addressing the problems of unemployment and poverty, it is also recognised that the really destitute will have to be looked after in terms of social security. Programmes in respect of social security can be divided into three sub-groups: providing social grants to those who meet the criteria; providing social services to the aged, disabled, children, youth, and women; and, providing a framework for community development and moral regeneration. Participation in sports and culture is also seen as important in ensuring healthy people and communities. The programmes to address this property are as follows:

- ❖ Expand Social Assistance
  - Moqhaka
  - Ngwathe
- ❖ Provide Emerging Food Security
  - Moqhaka
  - Ngwathe
- ❖ Increase Access to Commonages
  - Fezile Dabi
- ❖ Implement Community Development Projects
  - Moqhaka
  - Ngwathe
- ❖ Provide Early Childhood Development Services
  - Moqhaka
  - Metsimaholo

- ❖ Programmes for Unemployed and Out-of School Youths
  - Ngwathe
  - Moqhaka
  - Metsimaholo
- ❖ Moral Regeneration Programmes
  - Metsimaholo

#### **D) Improve Cultural, Sport and Recreational Facilities**

Improving cultural, sport and recreational activities is set as a strategic directive in order to create an environment for healthier and better-educated individuals. The programmes to address this priority are as follows:

- ❖ Provide Library Services
  - Moqhaka
  - Metsimaholo
- ❖ Provide Sport Facilities
  - ❖ Moqhaka
  - Metsimaholo

### **5.1.3. Justice and Crime Prevention**

#### **A) Facilitate an Improved and Effective Integrated Criminal Justice System**

The respective programmes are as follows:

- ❖ Victim Empowerment
  - Metsimaholo
- ❖ Children in Conflict with the Law
  - Metsimaholo
- ❖ Develop Integrated Crime-Prevention Programmes
  - Metsimaholo

## **B) Ensure Effective and Efficient Police Service in the Province**

The respective programmes are as follows:

- ❖ Effective Visible Police Service
  - Metsimaholo (Main tourism areas)
- ❖ Encourage Community Participation
  - Metsimaholo (Main tourism areas)
- ❖ Promote Accessibility to Police Services
  - Metsimaholo (Main tourism areas)
- ❖ Enhance Service Delivery and Transformation
  - Main Tourism Areas

## **C) Establish an Effective Disaster Prevention and Response Capacity for Disasters throughout the Province**

The respective programmes are as follows:

- ❖ Co-ordinate Integrated Disaster Management Services
  - Fezile Dabi
- ❖ Minimize Impact of Disasters
  - N3 and N1 Road accidents
  - Sasolburg chemical disasters

## **D) Improve Traffic Policing and Road Incident Management**

The respective programmes are as follows:

- ❖ Provide Effective Emergency Communication
  - N1
  - N3
  - Metsimaholo
- ❖ Implement Road Traffic Regulations

- N1
- N3
- Metsimaholo
  
- ❖ Implement Effective Emergency Services
  - N1
  - N3
  - Metsimaholo
  
- ❖ Implement Safety at all Institutions
  - Fezile Dabi

#### **5.1.4. Effective Governance and Administration**

##### **A) Ensure a Healthy Environment through Integrated Environmental Management**

- ❖ Implement Integrated Environmental Management
  - Metsimaholo

#### **5.2. Free State Spatial Development Framework (2009) Draft**

In terms of the Free State Spatial Development Framework (2009 – Draft), the following key spatial elements have been identified around which the spatial initiatives must be implemented:

- Centres;
- Nodes;
- Hubs;
- Tourism Corridors;
- Transportation Corridors;
- Development Corridors;
- Zones.

The spatial implication of the above within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality is summarized as follows:

### 5.2.1. Centres

<b>Administrative Centres</b>
○ Sasolburg

### 5.2.2. Nodes

<b>Collective Economic Nodes</b>	<b>Specialized Economic Nodes</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Sasolburg</li><li>- Kroonstad</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Viljoenskroon</li><li>- Heilbron</li></ul>
<b>Manufacturing Nodes</b>	<b>Mining Nodes</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Sasolburg</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Viljoenskroon</li></ul>
<b>Tourism Node</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Sasolburg</li><li>- Parys</li><li>- Vrederfort Dome</li><li>- Koppies Dam</li><li>- Vaal Dam</li></ul>	

### 5.2.3. Hubs

<b>Petro-Chemical Hub</b>
○ Sasolburg

#### **5.2.4. Tourism Corridors**

- None

#### **5.2.5. Transport Corridors**

- N1
- N3
- R34

#### **5.2.6. Development Corridors**

- None

#### **5.2.7. Zones**

<b>Tourism</b>	<b>Commercial Agriculture</b>
- Vaal River	No specified area
<b>Irrigation Zones</b>	
- Koppies Dam	
- Vaal River	
- Vals River	

### **5.3. Local Municipal Spatial Development Framework's**

Local Municipal Spatial Development Frameworks were prepared for Metsimaholo, Mafube, Ngwathe and Moqhaka.

Within each of the respective Spatial Development Framework's a number of detail issues were addressed which primarily focussed on the configuration of the existing urban areas. Where issues were identified which had a District impact or where District structuring was required these elements were addressed.

The respective Municipal Spatial Development Framework's is reflected in **Map 13** **(Annexure E)**.

## **CHAPTER 6: ALIGNMENT WITH ADJACENT MUNICIPAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK**

As the Fezile Dabi District Municipality Spatial Development Framework should not be viewed in isolation, the Spatial Development Frameworks from adjacent Municipalities were obtained with the intention to ascertain any potential impact on the Fezile Dabi District Municipality Spatial Development Framework.

The impacts of the respective adjacent Spatial Development Framework's are as follows:

### **6.1. Sedibeng District Municipality Spatial Development Framework (2006/7)**

The following aspects have been identified from the Sedibeng District Municipality Spatial Development Framework (2006/7) which has an impact on the development of the Fezile Dabi District Municipality Spatial Development Framework.

#### **6.1.1. Reinventing the Economy**

##### ***A) Manufacturing***

In view of the negative impact of the noxious industries (pollution) on the residents of Sedibeng District Municipality, it is proposed that non-noxious (noise, air and underground pollution) activities be promoted not to be established in the District.

##### ***B) Tourism***

###### **• Water Sports**

The Vaal River and Vaal Dam presents a diversity of water sports activities which need to be promoted to South Africa as a whole. These activities must also be made more accessible to the majority of residents in Sedibeng.

The Vaal River which forms the southern boundary of the District, presents a major opportunity to diversity the local economy by means of major tourism and recreational facilities.

A Local Spatial Development Plan should be developed, including the following:

- Detailed environmental assessment;
- Strategic development opportunities;
- Physical development plan;
- Operational and capital investment plan;
- Identification of investors and stakeholders;
- Land release mechanisms;

- Identification of markets (International, Internal, Business related); and
- Formulation of comprehensive marketing plan.

The above strategic plan needs to be established together with the Fezile Dabi District Municipality (Free State) as it will benefit both Municipalities.

- **Eco-Tourism**

Within Sedibeng District Municipality there are a large number of natural eco-tourism attractions (nature reserve, conservancies, water courses, river systems and the Vaal Dam) which must be developed and marketed to the benefit of all residents.

- **Heritage**

The Sedibeng District Municipality has a rich and diverse cultural and political history which should be maximized and developed to attract local and external tourists. Well defined heritage routes linked to activity needs to be established.

### ***C) Agriculture***

The majority of land within the Sedibeng District Municipality area is characterized by a rural environment complimented with some form of agricultural practice (extensive and rain fed). As one of the activities within the primary economic sector, this sector is not fully utilized within the District and provides opportunities for stock and game farming.

With regard to agricultural development, the following is proposed:

- **Extensive Agriculture**

Sedibeng District can be regarded as a very important resource in terms of food production for Gauteng. With the vast extent of the rural environment, commercial agriculture and tourism related practices (game farming) should be promoted and supported.

- **Intensive Agriculture**

Within the District, intensive agriculture (irrigation and hydroponics) need to be promoted along water systems and where underground water sources can be extracted.

- **Urban agriculture**

Various portions of land within existing urban concentrations which is unsuitable for urban development should be developed to the benefit of unemployed disadvantaged beneficiaries, where substance farming can take place. Local Municipalities should make available commonage land for such purposes.

### **6.1.2. Renewing our Communities**

#### **A) *Concentrate Public Investment in identified Nodes***

At present the Nodal structure within the Sedibeng District is poorly defined and unevenly distributed in terms of locational factors.

The proposed hierarchy of development nodes is as follows:

- Central Business Districts:
  - Vereeniging;
  - Meyerton;
  - Vanderbiljpark; and
  - Heidelberg.
- Regional Activity Nodes:
  - Three Rivers; and
  - Sebokeng (Opposite Hostels).
- Primary Activity Nodes:
  - Residential Station;
  - Moshweshwe Road (opposite Evaton);
  - Ratanda;
  - Evaton (Adams Road); and
  - Walkerville.

Both the Vereeniging and Vanderbiljpark CBD's are characterized by urban decay and stagnation and need to be revitalized.

### **6.1.3. Reviving our Environment**

#### **A) *Open Space System***

A continuous and sustainable open space system that is largely accessible by the public should be promoted throughout Sedibeng District. Such a system should protect, highlight and link the natural features within the district such as Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve, Vaal River and Vaal Dam. The system should also link up with and enhance the man made elements within the region such as open spaces and squares.

The major focus areas in the region should be linked via the natural water courses which flow through the area, namely the Suikerbosriver, Blesbokspruit, Klipriver, Leeuspruit, Rietspruit and Vaal River.

### ***B) Rehabilitation of Mining Areas***

The Sedibeng District is characterized by a number of mine dumps and heaps which is aestically unattractive. These dumps need to be rehabilitated which could provide development opportunities in the future, especially along the banks of the Vaal River.

### ***C) Restrict the establishment of Noxious Industries***

The historical establishment of large noxious industries in the District have resulted in air and groundwater pollution together with detrimental health implication to the residents. The establishment of noxious industries should not be promoted.

## **6.1.4. Reintegrating the Region**

### **6.1.4.1. Improved Transport Connectivity / Revitalization of Corridors**

#### ***A) National Road and Freeways (High Mobility)***

The National Road and Freeway network in Sedibeng ensures good regional accessibility for the District and links it to all major centres in Southern Africa. The major network includes the N1, R59, N3 and N17. These roads provide for high mobility.

#### ***B) Major Provincial and Arterial Roads (Development Corridors)***

These roads should be promoted as the main public transport and development corridors in Sedibeng District, with mixed land uses high density residential development along certain sections of these corridors in support of the public transport function. These sections will provide the necessary impetus to extended economic opportunities into the historically disadvantaged townships.

The identified roads provide important linkages and should be optimized to link historically disadvantaged communities to areas of major employment. The roads are as follows:

- **Provincial Route R59** – the main north-south linkage through the study area, linking Vereeniging/Vanderbijlpark with Meyerton and northwards towards Alberton in Ekurhuleni.
- **R57 from the N1 Southwards** – towards Metsimaholo Local Municipality.

#### ***C) Tourism Corridors***

The following roads have been identified to serve as Tourism Corridors throughout the Sedibeng District:

- R42 Road linking Heidelberg, Ratanda, Vereeniging, Sharpville, Vanderbijlpark and Lochvaal;
- R54 linking Vereeniging to the Vaal Dam (Vaal Marina); and

- It is also proposed that an internal linkage road system be identify which will link areas of historical significance with each other, for example, Sharpsville, Boipatong, Sebokeng and Evaton.

#### **6.1.4.2. Logistical Support to Industry and Business**

In addition to the system of corridors and development nodes, the Vereeniging Airport needs to be upgraded to provide for a higher order facility.

#### **6.2. Lejweleputswa District Municipality Spatial Development Framework (2008)**

Apart from the transportation corridors (N1, P36, P79, P32) which link into Fezile Dabi District Municipality from the west, the major landuse along the boundary is agricultural. A tourism zone has been identified along the Vaal River.

#### **6.3. Klerksdorp /Orkney Spatial Development Framework (North West Province)**

This area is located towards the Northwestern section of the Fezile Dabi District Municipality and is characterized by the urban concentrations of Klerksdorp and Orkney. The following cross boundary landuse proposals have an influence on the Fezile Dabi District Municipality Spatial Development Framework:

- Strong transportation linkages along the R30 and R76 towards Viljoenskroon and Vierfontein;
- Large mineral deposits; and
- A strip of land adjacent to the Vaal River which is earmarked for Private Open space.

#### **6.4. Potchefstroom Spatial Development Framework (North West Province)**

The Potchefstroom urban concentration is located to the north west of Parys within the North West Province. The following elements have an impact of the Fezile Dabi District Municipality Spatial Development Framework:

- Strong transportation linkage between Potchefstroom and Parys;
- The Vredefort Dome world Heritage Site which is located on both sides of the Vaal River.

#### **6.5. Thabo Mofutsanyane District Municipality Spatial Development Framework**

The Thabo Mofutsanyane District Municipality is located to the south of the Fezile Dabi District Municipality. The following elements have an impact on the Fezile Dabi District Municipality Spatial Development Framework.

- Good transportation linkages along the N3, R26, R57 and R76.
- Agricultural development along the southern boundary of Fezile Dabi District Municipality.

#### **6.6. Gert Sibande District Municipality Spatial Development Framework (Mpumalanga Province)**

The Gert Sibande District Municipality is located to the northeast of Fezile Dabi District Municipality. The following elements have an impact on the Fezile Dabi District Municipality Spatial Development Framework:

- The strategic N3 national road.
- A variety of different land uses along the Vaal dam (conservation, low density development) which is developed in a fragmented manner; and
- Agricultural development.

### **6.7. Conclusion**

From the above it is evident that a number of farms giving elements from the adjacent municipalities need to be taken into consideration in the preparation of the Fezile Dabi District Municipalities Spatial Development Framework.

## **CHAPTER 7: SECTOR PLAN INPUTS**

A number of Sector Plans have been prepared for the Fezile Dabi District Municipality over recent years. Although the detail documents should be read in its full context, a number of strategic guidelines have been identified which has a spatial implication.

The respective inputs are as follows:

### **7.1. Integrated Economic Development Plan (2009)**

The Fezile Dabi District Municipality Integrated Economic Development Plan (2009) was prepared by Messrs Goba Management Consultancy.

The above document was primarily based on National and Provincial guiding principles and objectives, without being specific on detail activities to be implemented in Fezile Dabi District Municipality which have a spatial implication.

Eight thrusts were identified on which the economic development drive should be based and are:

- Good governance and creation of an enabling environment;
- Human resource development;
- Industrial and “Big Business” Development;
- SMME Development;
- Community empowerment and development;
- Rural Development;
- Agriculture Development; and

- Tourism Development.

Each of the identified thrusts is briefly explained as follows:

#### *7.1.1. Good Governance and the Creation of an Enabling Environment*

The re-alignment and capacitation of the institutional structures, especially local government, can only be performed through a systematic approach to the problems being experienced. The specific issues relating to the appointment of personnel is beyond the focus of this study but is central to this thrust that the departments and/or institutions are adequately and appropriately staffed.

However, the focus of this strategic thrust relates to the creation of an appropriate framework within which suitable regulatory reformation and implementation can take place. Furthermore, fitting organizational re-alignment as well as an adjusted approach to infrastructure maintenance is advocated.

#### *7.1.2. Human Resource Development*

The socio-economic conditions throughout the Fezile Dabi District are not optimal for full participation in the economic system. This is particularly true for the skills and literacy levels. Therefore a focused approach is required that will address the structural problems being caused by the inappropriate and limited skills base. This implies that the labour forces' quality should receive attention i.e. improvement. The only approach that can be followed to facilitate this revolves around the provision of opportunities for the local communities to participate in skills enhancement and development programmes.

The main aim of this thrust is to facilitate and improve the accessibility of skills development programmes for the communities in a manner that is conducive to an improved availability of skilled labour. Additionally, the skills development thrusts focus on the potential role of the tertiary institutions as well as the expansion of required business skills. In other words, this thrust contains specific strategies aimed at the improvement of the business management skills.

This thrust furthermore incorporates national issues such as HIV/Aids into the HRD function.

#### *7.1.3. Industrial & Big Business Development*

Overall business development throughout the Fezile Dabi is the following thrust in the development framework. This thrust includes the activities that must be undertaken to support the development of firstly the existing business concerns as well as potential business developments throughout the District. It should be emphasized that although the focus is on manufacturing, the implementation of the specific development programmes are of such nature that all the remaining sectors will benefit from their implementation. This thrust is formulated in a manner that will provide the foundation of such improvement. The elements, of the thrust can be classified as being on a project level, the immediate implementation of these activities should be viewed as a critical building block for economic development in the Fezile Dabi District.

The approach to this developmental problem (as proposed in this development thrust) can be described as the removal of development barriers which are faced by investors i.e. limited information, establishment costs as well as a lack of a fast-tracked method to obtain information relating to the local conditions.

Further, the stabilization of the current industrial base is viewed as a critical element in the deployment of this thrust.

#### 7.1.4. SMME Development

The support for SMMEs can be classified into two primary pillars, firstly the support provided to the existing SMME's and secondly the support provided to the emerging entrepreneur in the start-up or initial phases of the business cycle.

Inefficient communication between entrepreneurs and activity focal points is a major constraint to SMME development. However, the entrepreneur rarely bridges constraints limiting such communications. This translates into lack of innovation due to the limited demand orientation of promotional programmes, insufficient change of experiences as well as a complete lack of innovative impulses. This implies that the elements of this thrust, through the implementation of the various development programmes, the activities of SMME's will be supported and encouraged to expand i.e. create employment.

This support and encouragement should be aimed at the existing SMME's within the local economies as well as the start-ups or new ventures within the local economy. The support should be provided to these entities by the local municipalities in conjunction with the District Municipality and other government and non-government institutions.

Additionally, a specific mechanism must be created to assist SMME's to participate and secure tenders in the current competitive environment from big business. It is emphasized that only through competitive products (including price and quality) and service (including supply chain activities) can SMME's optimally participate in the tender process to obtain the contract of big business.

#### 7.1.5. Community Empowerment and Development

As part of the IEDP, community development is emphasized. It is however acknowledged that pure LED is primarily focused on the business environment. The current socio-economic situation throughout Fezile Dabi warrants another dimension to the LED process.

The focus of this thrust is therefore to ensure that the larger/broader community is involved in the process. While participatory planning is one of the key building blocks of the IDP process, specific attention is focused on community development in the IEDP. The key focus is of such nature that individual development programmes are incorporated to deal with the following aspects of community development:

- Poverty alleviation;
- Youth development;
- HIV/Aids;
- Community leader capacitation.

### 7.1.6. Rural Development

This strategic thrust, in its totality should present the rural communities with opportunities to realize their own potential and contribute more meaningfully to the local economy. It is critically important to learn from international experience; namely that successful rural development must be implemented in a participatory and decentralized fashion in order to respond to articulated priorities and observed opportunities at the local level.

The initial focus should be on the management of a selected number of nodes (poverty pockets). These 'pilot' sites will act as learning experiences which can then be duplicated. The range of programme options will be customized in each node into a basket of services. Such an approach recognizes the risks of over-concentration of resources in a few areas. Therefore the relevant indicators must be put in place to manage the tendencies on the programme effectively.

The preceding paragraphs imply that the existing rural projects be consolidated. This does not mean that functional projects should be ceased, this implies that these projects be coordinated within the region. The strength of the strategy should lie in its emphasis on a mechanism that can achieve results on the ground.

### 7.1.7. Agriculture Development

Agriculture is one of the sectors in the local district economy that has the potential to act as a driver of LED. However, the current strategic importance of this sector is relatively low. The aim of this thrust is to support local agriculture activities on two fronts i.e. the emerging farmer and the existing commercial farmers.

### 7.1.8. Tourism Development

The fast-growing industry, attributed to the country's unparalleled scenic and wildlife attractions and its rich cultural and historic sites, has sustained consistent growth through the 1990s. It is necessary to structure the various tourism products and services available throughout Fezile Dabi in a fitting manner to ensure that the demands of local, regional and international tourists are met. Three development projects are associated with this thrust namely:

- Developing of tourism products;
- Improving the tourism market; and
- Growing the market.

## **7.2. Disaster Management Plan (2010)**

During 2010, the "Review of the Disaster Management Plan" was prepared by Messrs Commit Consulting.

Although a total of 49 Action Points have been identified to be taken, the majority of these actions focus on training, institutional matters, community involvement, risk management, development of guidelines, contingency plans and others.

The importance to the preparation of Spatial Development Frameworks relates primarily to the locality of land uses (residential, business, social and other) in relation to hazardous conditions. In all planning of future development areas, the following elements need to be taken into consideration:

- Pollution and the sources thereof;
- Veld fires;
- Informal Settlement Fore;
- Lighting;
- Flooding; and
- Severe wind.

Apart from the above elements, the following disaster risks were also identified by the communities to be taken into consideration when planning settlements.

- Communities living next to industrial activities such as gas pipes, fuel depots and hazardous materials production are at risk to gas explosions and leakages.
- Old or failing sewer infrastructure poses a huge threat to the environment and communities. This could potentially lead to exposure to disease (epidemics), which could in turn put a strain on health facilities in the district and neighbouring districts.
- Capacity shortages to deal with truck incidents in the district, especially when taking into consideration the volume of trucks passing through the district's main routes and type of loads that they carry, pose a danger. New settlements and pedestrians along these routes are exposed to threats of hazardous spillages.

### **7.3. Agricultural Sector Plan (2010)**

During 2010, an Agricultural Sector Plan was prepared by Messrs S and V Holdings for the Fezile Dabi District Municipality and its respective Local Municipalities.

Although no specific areas have been identified for implementing a number of programmes have been identified for implementation.

The identified programmes for the Local Municipalities are as follows:

- Intensive commercial urban and rural farming development;
- Agricultural production packages with high level technical and market development support;
- Develop agricultural infrastructures;
- Establishment of inland fish farming;
- Creation of well developed grazing camps in each Municipality;
- Construction and rehabilitation of earth dams and the development commercial irrigation schemes;
- Establishment of commercial orchards in each Local Municipality;
- Establishment of Commercial Model Centre Farm(s) in each town;

- Acquisition of additional land for strategic high impact long term commercial programmes;
  - Develop commercial community nurseries;
  - Community small scale farming;
  - Develop Ducks and Turkey farming enterprise;
  - Conduct high impact training workshops and seminars for local farmers;
  - Provision of short to medium term courses for Women and Youth (6 to 2 months);
  - Provide high level systematic commodity based mentorship support;
  - Provide agricultural tertiary courses: 3-4 years 10 Youth per Local Municipality;
  - Undertake agricultural fact finding exposure visits twice a year with the aim to create new partnership and expose 120 farmers;
  - Provide agricultural exposure short to medium term training courses: 3-6 months for LED officers to build internal capacity and technical understanding;
- 
- Conduct high level workshop and seminars twice in a year for farmers and officials ten (10) people per each Municipality;
  - Undertake strategic fact finding mission to other countries with similar conditions;
  - Conduct feasibility study for Agro-processing, and value adding and SMME processing plant development;
  - Create high level linkages with private sector and Government institutions;
  - Identify market opportunities and possible linkages between existing individual and farming groups or SMME's;
  - Establish young farmers association in each Municipality with the aim to inculcate agriculture to the future generation at schools level;
  - Develop master farmers exchange programme;
  - Revitalize facilities in Mqohaka for agricultural shows;
  - Host high level farmer's day and seminars in each Municipality;
  - Place sign boards three (3) per Local Municipality to (promote and marketing agricultural potential of each Municipality);
  - Have FDDM agricultural promotion slot on Newspaper, National TV and Radio(s);
  - Develop local agricultural newsletter which will agriculture development in each municipality at the same provide farmers market related information;
  - Establish or provide facilitation and coordination support to existing agricultural forums in each municipality, this must serve as a vehicle to provide and promote agricultural cohesion among all role players in the sector and beyond;
  - Improve communication lines with other departments review and align service delivery mechanism to include agriculture as a priority for economic growth;
  - Establish a strategic committee which will act as an agricultural advisory committee to the District;
  - Provide agricultural based incentive scheme for local farmer and private investors (the scheme must serve as an investment attraction strategy);
  - Conduct a survey on the level of Agri-BEE charter compliance by local companies;
  - Conduct annual farm profitability and sustainability profiling survey;
  - Conduct training on inland fish farming and establishment of viable inland fish farming enterprises;
  - Provide infrastructure for small and medium scale farmers complement the department of agriculture in this regard;
  - Develop a systematic small scale and medium level animal quality improvement programme;
  - Undertake assessments to divert effluent sewer water for use in orchards and urban forestry development;
  - Conduct market development feasibility;

- Nursery Enterprise (Establish commercial black owned nurseries);
- Hatchery Enterprise (Establish 1 or 2 hatchery enterprises; this will depend on a number of poultry farmers in the District which will be in need of day old chick);
- Milling plant Enterprise (Establish one black owned milling plant);
- Animal fodder Enterprise (Establish 15 fodder producers in 4 Municipalities namely: Moqhaka, Ngwathe, Mafube and Metsimaholo);
- Establish: Feedlot, abattoir and tannery Enterprises (Build 1-3 black owned feedlot and 1 abattoir enterprise);
- Conduct Cluster Diagnosed Studies in each Municipality;
- Provide facilitation, coordination and technical support to establish district based commonage management committee;
- Provide commonage management and technical support in each municipality and mechanization support; and
- Establish farmer's mentorship programme in each Municipality.

Deriving from the above specific areas identified 4 (four) priority areas were identified for implementation. The priority areas are as follows:

- A) Agricultural economic growth, development and employment;
- B) Social and Human Development;
- C) Crime Prevention against farmers;
- D) Efficient Governance and Administration of Agricultural Plan.

The detailed activities and action plan for the above is as follows:

### **7.3.1. Agricultural Economic Development and Employment Creation**

Activity	Action Plan
Develop and expand commercial agriculture	Secure Fezile Dabi District Municipality as an agricultural development and investment hub.
Facilitate land reform	Facilitate completion of land restitution programme. Buy land and establish commercial agricultural programmes for small scale, medium and large scale black farmers.
Maximize economic potential of the District	In partnership with various private sectors develop and implement agricultural economic development activities to promote: small scale, medium and large scale economic development activities for the empowerment of women and youth.

Facilitate provision of an environment conducive to accelerating agricultural infrastructural development	Develop Irrigation Schemes for commercial farming using effluent water from sewerage plants. Fast-track the facilitation of Agri-BBBEE.
Make land available for agro-processing, value adding infrastructure and facility development. And link such infrastructure and facilities to the standards and processing needs of the private sector and state departments.	Develop such facilities and production support infrastructure on state own land and link up MIG and EPWP to explore possible funding support for the development of such infrastructures including irrigation infrastructures.

### **7.3.2. Social and Human Development Activity**

<b>Activity</b>	<b>Action Plan</b>
Enhance Farmer's skills and Self-Reliance	Implement adult literacy and numeracy programmes. Provide Adult Basic Education and Training (ABET) in accordance with the ABET Act implement skills development programmes at farm level by establishing developing and farm workers focus programme.
Improve access and quality of formal education	Address critical gaps in identified areas of skills shortages. Implement General Education and Training Certificate. Implement Further Education and Training Certificate in Agriculture.

### 7.3.3. Crime Prevention and Security for Farmers

Activity	Action Plan
Facilitate and coordinate effective integrated criminal prevention system at farm level.	Coordination of an integrated crime prevention system with the farm communities and SAPA. Work with SAPS, farmers and farm workers to develop an effective crime prevention system at farm level. Develop and implement integrated crime prevention programmes for farmers.
Ensure effective and efficient police service in the Fezile Dabi District Municipality.	Encourages effective visible police service for farmers. Encourage community participation in farmer safety and their farms include farm workers and provide them with community safety training support.
Establish an effective disaster prevention and response capacity for disasters throughout the Fezile Dabi District Municipality.	The coordination of integrated disaster management services. Minimize the impact of disasters. Implement integrated disaster management strategy.

### 7.3.4. Effective Governance and Administration

Activity	Action Plan
Improve integrated development planning and implementation.	Align and co-ordinate IDPs and ASDP. Improve cluster system across the two spheres of government in the Fezile Dabi District Municipality. Ensure effective implementation of intergovernmental relations. Coordinate strategic programmes (Project strengthen. etc.) Coordinate public / private partnerships. Establish community-based food production through ward committees, in schools and churches.

Ensure effective communication with key strategic stakeholders and clients.	Improve interaction between government and the potential stakeholders. Establish community and private sector joint discussion twice.
Promote Black Economic Empowerment in Agriculture.	Create opportunities for Agric-BBBEE for women, youths and people with disabilities.
Ensure effective human resource development and management.	Develop and implement integrated human resource development strategy. Establish and coordinate bursaries for youth. Establish agricultural bursary fund.
Build government's capacity in critical areas.	Improve strategic planning, training, monitoring and evaluation capacity. Develop information technology skills Provide capacity building programmes for all staff.
Ensure a healthy environment through integrated environmental management.	Implement integrated environmental management. Coordinate integrated environmental management.
Monitor, evaluate and review ASDP.	Develop and implement ASDP monitoring and evaluation.

#### **7.4. Integrated Waste Management Plans**

Integrated Waste Management Plans have been prepared for all the Local Municipalities (with the exception of Ngwathe Local Municipality) by Messrs KV3 during 2008.

Although the respective reports are comprehensive in extent, this section only focuses on recommendations which have spatial implications for each of the Local Municipalities.

##### **7.4.1. Metsimaholo Local Municipality**

The recommendations (spatial) are as follows:

Focus Area	Objective	Recommendation
Disposal Infrastructure Development	Objective 1: Authorize (permit) the Sasolburg, Oranjeville and Deneysville landfill sites.	Submit Permit/Directions Application Reports to DEAT for the continued operation of the Sasolburg, Oranjeville and Deneysville landfill sites. Conduct full EIA as part of authorization process.
	Objective 2: Authorize (permit) the Vaalpark garden refuse transfer station.	Submit Permit/Directions Application Report to DEAT for the continued operation of the Vaalpark garden refuse transfer station. Conduct Basic Assessment i.t.o EIA Regulations.
	Objective 3: Upgrade and Improve management of Sasolburg, Oranjeville and Deneysville landfill sites (short term).	Establish Guard House and Ablution Facilities at the disposal facilities. Upgrade (Replace/Repair) fencing at the disposal facilities. Operate waste disposal facilities in accordance with Minimum Requirements and operational plan to be drafted as part of authorization procedure for the sites. Maintain Infrastructure on the sites.
	Objective 4: Identify, establish and authorize a regional waste disposal site to replace the existing Sasolburg landfill (medium term).	Appoint consultant to identify, establish and authorize a regional waste disposal site for Metsimaholo (medium term). Apply for authorization from DEAT for the establishment of the regional disposal site.
Management of Illegal Activities	Improve Removal of Illegally Dumped Waste.	Clean Illegally Dumping Hot Spot Areas.

#### 7.4.2. Moghaka Local Municipality

The recommendations (spatial) are as follows:

Focus Area	Objective	Recommendation
Disposal Infrastructure Development	Objective 1: Authorize the Viljoenskroon landfill site.	Submit Permit/Directions Application Report to DEAT for the continued operation of the Viljoenskroon landfill site. Conduct full EIA as part of authorization process.
	Objective 2: Upgrade and Improve management of Kroonstad, Viljoenskroon and Steynsrus landfills.	Establish Guard House and Ablution Facilities at the disposal facilities. Upgrade fencing at the Viljoenskroon disposal facility. Operate waste disposal facilities in accordance with Minimum Requirements and permit conditions (for Kroonstad and Steynsrus disposal sites which are permitted). Maintain Infrastructure on the sites.

#### 7.4.3. Mafube Local Municipality

The recommendations (spatial) are as follows:

Focus Area	Objective	Recommendation
Disposal Infrastructure Development	Objective 1: Authorize the Frankfort landfill site.	Submit Permit/Directions Application Report to DEAT for the continued operation of the Frankfort landfill site. Conduct full EIA as part of authorization process.

	Objective 2: Upgrade and Improve management of Frankfort, Tweeling, Cornelia and Villiers landfills.	Establish Guard House and Ablution Facilities at the disposal facilities. Upgrade (Replace/Repair) fencing at the disposal facilities. Operate waste disposal facilities in accordance with Minimum Requirements and permit conditions (for Tweeling, Cornelia and Villiers disposal sites which are permitted). Maintain Infrastructure on the sites.
--	--	--

### **7.5. Water Services Development Plan (2010)**

Based on the Water Services Development Plan which was prepared by Messrs Makgoba Development Facilitation during October 2010, the conclusions are as follows:

“It is evident that almost all existing households and all residents within the four municipalities of the District have access to water, except, at some newly-establishment settlements. Even so, these new settlements do have access to water through communal water taps, etc. However, the absence of water infrastructure maintenance plans in almost all the local municipalities is a major concern. Secondly, the use of old asbestos pipes that are over 30 years old in some municipalities is also of paramount concern. Lastly, due to poor payment rates for water services and high numbers of indigents, the municipalities do not have sufficient funds to replace the old asbestos pipes and upgrade some of the plants.”

## **CHAPTER 8: FEZILE DABI DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK**

### **8.1. Objectives**

In the preparation of the Fezile Dabi Spatial Development Framework the following objectives were identified:

- The Spatial Development Framework must address the vision, mission and objectives as stipulated by the District Municipality, which has a spatial significance.
- Inputs as obtained from both the Local Municipality Spatial Development Framework and the Provincial Spatial Development Framework which has a District importance will be indicated.
- Indicate developmental focus areas which will guide the spatial structuring and potential areas of investment.

## 8.2. Structuring Elements

The Fezile Dabi District Municipality Spatial Development Framework is structured to address the following form giving elements:

- Hierarchy of Urban Nodes linked to functionality;
- Transportation corridors linked to activity (activity corridors);
- Agricultural Development;
- Tourism Development;
- Environmental Management;
- Infrastructure investment; and
- A Glossary of Terms/Definitions is contained in **Annexure A**.

### 8.2.1. Hierarchy of Urban Nodes linked to functionality

In the context of Fezile Dabi District Municipality, nodes can be defined to facilitate increased growth of existing urban areas of economic development, and ensure that economic development potential in areas of high poverty levels and densities are realized.

Nodes within the larger Fezile Dabi District Municipality can be classified as first and second order nodes where the first order nodes are the most urban and intensively developed areas; and second order nodes are less developed and less urban in nature being more focussed on tourism, agriculture and recreational facilities.

Within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality there are a total of 15 urbanized areas, which is characterized by its extent, function and sphere of influence.

In the structuring of the above areas, the primary role and function of each area need to be clearly defined.

#### **A) Definition of the description of the types of urban nodes is as follows:**

- ***Economic Nodes***

Although all the towns have some form of economic activity, the focus of primary economic nodes provide a number of higher order retail, financial and institutional activities complimented by service-and industrial areas. These nodes also provide a large number of job opportunities.

Economic Nodes are localities where economic growth will be promoted, based on the strengths and opportunities presented. Future capital investment should focus in these nodes. This will have the effect that a greater need for housing and infrastructure will arise; thus requiring the allocation of grants for capital investment projects to favour these localities more than those with limited growth potential.

These urban nodes are well accessible, both by rail and road.

- **Specialized Economic Urban Nodes**

Specialized economic nodes are characterized by manufacturing/processing activities based on the strengths of a specific sub-region in terms of its natural resources or comparable advantages.

- **Mining Nodes**

Mining nodes is located in close proximity to mining operations and provides residential, retail, social and other complimentary services to the core mining operations.

- **Agricultural Nodes**

These nodes are primarily located within dominant agricultural areas and provide a housing, retail, social and agricultural related service to the adjacent rural areas.

- **Tourism Nodes**

Tourism nodes are located within areas of natural beauty, heritage significance and recreational advantages. These urban centres provide activities and facilities related to the tourism industry. These areas are of national and international interest.

**B) Application within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality**

Within Fezile Dabi District Municipality, the respective urban nodes can be classified as follows:

Urban Node	Primary Function	Attributes
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sasolburg/Zamdela</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Economic Node</li> <li>- Specialized Node</li> <li>- Tourism Node</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Commercial and Industrial component</li> <li>• Retail and Private Services</li> <li>• Manufacturing high value differentiated goods (fuel, rubber, plastics, etc)</li> <li>• Petro-chemical plant</li> <li>• Labour intensive mass produced goods (36.6% of GVA)</li> <li>• Bio-Fuel Node</li> <li>• Good Accessibility (Road and Rail)</li> <li>• Tourism (events, hospitality, natural resource)</li> <li>• Administrative facilities</li> </ul>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Kroonstad/Maokeng</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Economic Node</li> <li>- Agricultural Node</li> <li>- Mining Node</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Commercial and industrial components</li> <li>• Retail and Private services</li> <li>• Defence force</li> <li>• Manufacturing</li> <li>• Higher order agricultural goods</li> <li>• Overnight tourism facilities</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Viljoenskroon/Rammulotsi</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Mining Node</li> <li>- Specialised Node</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manufacturing</li> <li>• Mining Activities (18.4% contribution to GVA) – Voorspoed, Anglo Gold</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Heilbron/Phiritona</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Specialized Node</li> <li>- Agricultural Node</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manufacturing (Simba SA , Clover)</li> <li>• Provide agricultural based services</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Frankfort/Namahadi</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Specialised Node</li> <li>- Agricultural Node</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bio-fuel node</li> <li>• Provide agricultural based services</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Parys/Tumahole</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Tourism Node</li> <li>- Agricultural Node</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vaal River</li> <li>• Hospitality</li> <li>• Arts and Crafts</li> <li>• Lifestyle Estate (Golf)</li> <li>• Vredefort Dome Heritage Site</li> <li>• Provide agricultural based goods</li> <li>• Private Golf Estate</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Koppies/Kwakwatsi</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Tourism Node</li> <li>- Agricultural Node</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Koppies Dam Nature Reserve</li> <li>• Provide agricultural based goods</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Villiers/Qalabotjha</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Agricultural Node</li> <li>- Tourism Node</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide higher order agricultural activities (maize)</li> <li>• Overnight facilities for tourists along N3 and close to Vaal Dam</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vredefort/Mokwallo</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Tourism Node</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Located with Vredefort Dome</li> <li>• Provide tourism related activities (arts/crafts, overnight, eco-tourism)</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deneysville</li> <li>• Oranjeville</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Tourism Node</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Tourism related activities based at Vaal Dam (hospitality, support services to boating, recreation, leisure residential)</li> </ul>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tweeling/ Mafahlaneng</li> <li>• Cornelia/Ntswantsati</li> <li>• Steynsrus/Matlwangtlwang</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Agricultural Node</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Smaller urban settings in agricultural based areas</li> <li>○ Provide supporting services to agricultural based community</li> </ul>
---	---	---

### **C) Sasolburg/Vanderbilipark and Vereeniging Urban Concentration**

The Vaal River provides the natural boundary between the Gauteng and Free State Province. Notwithstanding, the large commercial, industrial, social and recreational facilities which are provided by the respective urban concentrations very few cross Provincial discussions have been entered into between the respective authorities to maximize or to compliment natural resources and other activities to the benefit of the respective areas.

The movement of goods and people between urban concentrations does not recognize boundaries, but rather focus on addressing needs from an employment, social, commercial and recreational perspective.

In view of the close proximity of Sasolburg to the urban concentrations of Vanderbilipark and Vereeniging, the following is proposed:

- That strategic meetings be conducted between the Sedibeng District Municipality and Fezile Dabi District to identify areas of common interest;
- That common attributes (Vaal River, Vaal Dam, Vredefort Dome) be jointly identified and marketed; and
- That commercial, retail, social industrial and tourist “value” chains be established to support specific attributes within the respective urban areas.

The above should not only be restricted towards the urban concentrations, but also to:

- Linkages between the North West Province to areas such as Parys, Viljoenskroon and Vredefort; and
- Coordinated development and the establishment of effective linkages at the Vaal Dam.

#### **8.2.2. Transportation Corridors linked to functionality**

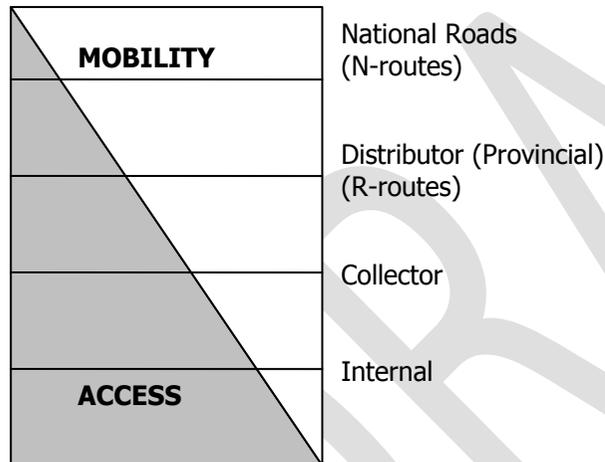
The Fezile Dabi District Municipality is characterized by a number of National-and Provincial roads, supported by a rail system which makes the area accessible to all the major urban centres in South Africa.

The development corridors will create the necessary linkages within and between the proposed urban centres and development zones. The transportation framework is based on the interaction and support between existing linkages and the development potential of specific areas. As transportation corridors tend to direct growth and development in the urban and rural environment it is proposed that the existing network is strengthened by promoting economic opportunities. Based on the principle of creating linkages, each potential development area requires specific levels of accessibility and hence specific intensities of linkages.

### 8.2.2.1. Transportation Structures

Major roads fulfil different transportation functions, depending on the type of road, and it is this specific function that determines the land use structure that will be suitable to abut these roads. Typically, a major road network consists of roads functioning on 4 levels, which are designed to work symbiotically.

The two upper levels consist of National Roads (N-routes) and Provincial Roads (R-routes). The primary purpose of these roads is to provide mobility. This level of mobility is determined by the number of accesses allowed along these roads, with a lesser number of accesses implying greater mobility. The freeway design only allows access to land uses bordering them at intersections, not provided at distances less than 5km apart, making these roads highly mobile. Distributor roads provide accesses at 400-600m intervals, thus providing fair levels of mobility, but also providing greater accessibility to neighbouring land uses than do freeways. In essence, National roads are designed to distribute traffic fast and efficiency over large distances, thus providing optimum regional mobility, whereas the distributor of roads is designed to give some measure of land use access. Because of its balance between mobility and land use accessibility, distributor roads and function effectively as public transport routes that provide inter-regional connectivity.



The two lower levels of the road hierarchy are collector roads and internal roads. As depicted in the Diagram above, these roads have high levels of access. In other words, they have intersections at regular intervals, giving neighbouring land uses good access to these roads. Because of the high number of accesses, mobility of these roads are impaired, more so than on a distributor road. Collector roads make excellent public transportation routes because they are easily accessed, and usually provide connect residential areas to distributor road.

Taking into consideration the typical road hierarchy set out above, and the scale of the District Spatial Development Framework, the focus within the Fezile Dabi Spatial Development Framework will be on National and Provincial roads. Collector and internal roads is addressed within the respective Municipal Spatial Development Framework's.

### 8.2.2.2. Development Corridors

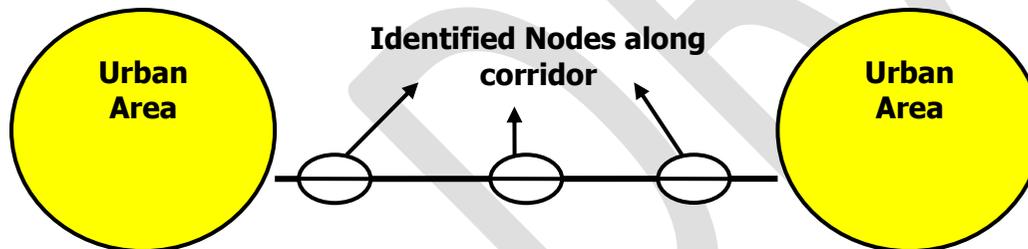
A number of roads and rail routes have been earmarked as corridors to act as conduits for development and to link development areas with each other, and with areas beyond the Fezile Dabi District Municipality area of jurisdiction.

In view of the extensive nature of Fezile Dabi District Municipality, the development and definition of the respective roads in the area is of utmost importance. Apart from the functionality of the respective roads, the linkage between the roads will be important for the following reasons:

- Accessibility to remote centres need to be improved which will have an impact on economic growth;
- Access between respective centres need to be improved which will facilitate improved public transport systems, efficient access to community services and the establishment of economic opportunities;
- Spatial development options will be identified ; and
- Large areas within Fezile Dabi District Municipality have development opportunities from an agricultural, manufacturing and tourism perspective. With the establishment of effective linkages, these areas could present various economic opportunities.

A development corridor can be defined as “a linear strip of land or area, connecting large activity nodes, traversing urban or inter-urban areas, surrounding a major transport facility or facilities, providing an appropriate regional level of mobility and accessibility to adjacent areas, and containing a high concentration of population and mixed land uses (job opportunities)”.

Along corridors between respective urban areas, it will not be possible to develop the total strip of land. In this case, specific areas need to be identified where development can occur. This is often refers to the “Strings on a bead” principle.



#### A) Primary Corridors (National Roads)

The two major development corridors within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality are the N3 and the N1 National Roads. As the design parameters along these corridors are restrictive in terms of access and building lines, the sheer volume on these roads should be utilized to the advantage of Fezile Dabi District Municipality.

Although the total length of these corridors will not be feasible to develop, the focus will be to attract potential investors to invest at certain focussed areas (accessibility) and to create economy of scale advantages.

The development proposals along the respective Freeways are as follows:

- ***N3 Freeway***

The development focus along the N3 Freeway should be Nodal development at urban centres to maximize investment opportunities.

The only urban centre located along the N3, is Villiers/Qalabotjha, which need to be promoted for overnight tourism (through traffic along N3), transport related activities (warehousing) in view of the convergence of the main railway freight line between Gauteng and Kwa-Zulu Natal and the N3; and the promotion of agricultural distribution activities.

- ***N1 Freeway***

The N1 Freeway is located along the western section of Fezile Dabi District Municipality and creates a link between Gauteng and Western Cape. This freeway provides an important transport freight and tourism link between the respective major urban concentrations in South Africa.

Although the total stretch of N1 Road through Fezile Dabi District Municipality cannot be developed, the Kroonstad urban concentration should be promoted for extended transport related activities and overnight tourism activities. Furthermore, the N1 Freeway provides important linkages (R34, R59, R76) to and from areas with high tourism and agricultural potential, which need to be clearly defined.

## **B) Secondary Corridors**

There are a number of very important inter-and intra roads within Fezile Dabi District Municipality which should be defined and linked to function and activities. The secondary development corridors are as follows:

- ***R34 Route***

This route provides an important east-west linkage through the area stretching from Cornelia, Frankfort, Heilbron, Edenville, Kroonstad and Welkom in the west. Apart from the effective inter-urban linkages it provides an important link for the distribution of agriculturally related produce.

- ***R59 Route***

This route provides a strong linkage between Gauteng (Vereeniging), Sasolburg, Parys, Vredfort, Viljoenskroon towards Bothaville. This route fulfils an important function from an agricultural, commercial and tourism perspective and need to be promoted as such.

- ***R57 Route***

This road links Gauteng via Vanderbiljpark and Vereeniging with Sasolburg and further southwards through Heilbron towards Bethlehem (Eastern Free State).

This route has a strong commercial (road freight to Sasolburg) and tourism (Eastern Free State) significance and need to be promoted as such. Heilbron and Sasolburg are located along this route and need to maximize on the route's potential.

- ***R76 Road***

This route links Klerksdorp (North West Province), Viljoenskroon, Kroonstad; Steynsrus further southwards towards Lindley/Senekal and therefore provides an effective link to the mining areas (north) and the agricultural centres along the route. Furthermore, also serves as a tourism link from the North West Province to the Eastern Free State.

In addition to the agricultural significance of the respective urban centres along this route, these towns should promote tourism related activities for through traffic (guesthouses, arts/crafts etc).

### **C) Tourism Corridors**

With the natural attributes within Fezile Dabi District Municipality, a number of primary tourism routes need to be identified and marketed as such, which includes the following:

- ***R76/R59/N1 Route***

This route stretches from Klerksdorp (North West Province) along the R76, from where it follows the R59 through Vredefort towards Parys up to Vanderbiljpark (R57) and Vereeniging. This route needs to be supported by the R723 and R501 leading from Potchefstroom.

Not only does the above roads link tourism attractions such as the Vredefort Dome, and Parys but it also provides linkages towards the Vaal River and from neighbouring Provinces.

- ***Route 716 (Vaal Dam)***

This route stretches from Villiers northwards through Oranjeville, Deneysville towards Vereeniging all along the Vaal Dam.

The Vaal Dam has become an important destination for weekend tourists and the boating fraternity and urban centres such as Deneysville and Oranjeville need to be promoted in supporting these activities.

- ***R82 Battlefield Route***

This route stretches from Kroonstad to Greenlands, which includes the Rooival Battlefield.

- **Scenic Routes**

- The Koepel Scenic Route (Sections of Roads S 264,212, 80 and 713).
- The Vaal Eden Scenic Route (Sections of Roads S 1052 and 171).
- Roads S 159 and sections of Road R 716 (to Jim Fouché Resort) providing relatively good access to various sections of the Vaal Dam.

### **8.2.2.3. Development Guidelines and Marketing**

During the development and implementation of development corridors there should be specific guidelines for the development thereof. Some of the marketing elements should incorporate the following:

- A specific name for: The corridor with the intention to create an identity;
- Signage: Appropriate signage at the gateway and at the different nodes;
- Marketing Material: Promotional material such as a website and advertisements;
- Information Centre: A centre where information about development opportunities and existing businesses along the corridor and at centres can be readily obtained. This should be combined with a tourism information centre;
- Development Incentives: Specific incentives to be offered to prospective investors ; and
- Performance Monitoring and Aftercare: Ensure that marketing measures and development guidelines are effective. Implementation should also be monitored and indicators of problem areas should be identified at early stage.

### **8.2.3. Agricultural Development**

#### **8.2.3.1. Introduction**

The majority of land within Fezile Dabi District Municipality is rural of nature where the agricultural sector contributes 18.7% to the local economy.

The contribution, protection and redistribution of agricultural land have been identified by Government Departments as an important employment generator which will benefit the diversification of the economy.

The daily challenges which are being faced by rural development, include:

- Uneven and disproportional distribution of social and economic facilities;
- Lack of potable water and sanitation systems;
- Poor access to urban amenities;
- Lack of development funding;
- Lack of housing and the ongoing problem of evictions;
- Shortage of employment opportunities; and
- Lack of a sufficient public transportation system.

The agricultural development within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality is influenced by the following guiding elements:

- The Agricultural Hub strategy as prepared by the Department of Agriculture;
- “Area Based Plans” as initiated by the Department of Land Affairs; and
- The characteristics of the Fezile Dabi District Municipality rural environment.

#### **8.2.3.2. Agricultural Hubs**

Agricultural Hubs are suitable areas to be protected for agricultural protection, with the following objectives:

- Optimising agricultural output and input into the Free State GDP;
- Fulfill the mandate of natural resource protection;
- Achieve sustainable development through balanced land use ; and
- Integrated agri-tourism as an outcome of the development of the agricultural hub.

The basis upon which the agricultural hubs need to be identified, is structured according to high potential agricultural land with the following definition – “It has the soil and terrain quality, growing season, and available moisture supply needed to produce sustained high yield of crops economically when treated and managed according to best possible farming practicing”.

In determining the agricultural hub, the capability of the land linked to the existing land use need to be determined. The following land uses are to be considered:

- Dry-land cultivated;
- Vacant for cultivation;
- Irrigated cultivated;
- Vacant for grazing;
- Small Holdings; and
- Build-up areas.

An agricultural Hub analysis needs to be conducted within each of the respective Local Municipalities.

### **8.2.3.3. Fezile Dabi District Municipality**

The potential of land depends on the soil quality and the availability of water. It is recommended that all cultivated and grazing land be protected from urban development and that future usage be guided by in-depth analysis which should consider soil potential, carrying capacity, type of agriculture, availability of water and others.

In view of the respective rural challenges and the diverse nature of agricultural activities, not only in terms of extent, but also in use, agricultural development is categorized into the following zones:

#### **A) *Intensive Agriculture***

Large areas of intensive agriculture are situated on areas of high water profitability, along river systems and next to dams. Although water cannot be uncontrollably be extracted from the respective watercourses without the consent from the Department of Water Affairs, there exist sufficient opportunities to promote intensive agriculture.

The intensive agricultural zone should support by the following:

- Mixed land uses based on agricultural activities;
- Low to medium intensity tourism, and hospitality uses;
- Establishment of a food security zone; and
- Provision of formal housing related to agricultural only.

The majority of intensive farming (irrigation) occurs in close proximity to the Koppies urban centre (Koppies Dam) and in isolated pockets along the Vaal River and its tributaries.

It is proposed that the existing smallholdings in Koppies serviced by the irrigation scheme be investigated to determine how it can be utilized more effectively and productively and to possibly re-establish small scale farmers on economically viable smallholdings.

In view of the potential, we believe that this type of agriculture type is not optimally utilized and should be further promoted. The major focus areas should be along the existing riversystems (Vaal and Vals River) and dams.

More intensive farming practices such as feeding paddocks; chicken farming, maize mills and hydroponics (vegetables) have the potential to provide additional employment opportunities.

In order to address and promote job creation and the development of viable agricultural practices, the following small-scale farm and commonage areas are proposed:

### **B) Extensive Agriculture**

From the agricultural assessment, 94% of all the land is either under dryland cultivation or being used for grazing purposes.

In view of the above, the following is recommended:

- That existing agricultural practices be protected and further be promoted to contribute ignorantly to the GVA of the Province, which at present is insignificant;
- Value Added complimentary agriculture related activities need to be established, which will include factories , distribution depots and secondary meat processing industries; and
- Limited low intensity tourism and eco-tourism, recreational activities and hospitality uses.

Areas which were identified by the Department of Agriculture as high potential land include the Viljoenskroon District and the area between Koppies and Edenville.

### **C) Urban Agriculture**

A number of Land Parcels have been identified in close proximity to existing and proposed urban development with the primary purpose to present an opportunity to unemployed disadvantaged beneficiaries to become involved with substance urban agriculture. The identified land must be obtained through the municipal commonage programme of the Department of Land Affairs; whereafter the land could be sublet by the Municipality to individual beneficiaries.

The Local Municipality should formulate specific policies to guide small-scale farming as well as protect valuable agricultural land at the peripheral area between urban and rural development. Implementation of small scale farming programmes will broaden the economic base by creating new employment opportunities.

The following complimentary activities need to be considered:

- Mixed landuses based on supporting urban agriculture;
- Provision of good quality produce to adjacent urban areas; and
- Provision of limited formal housing in surrounding towns related to urban agricultural needs.

With the availability of underground water resources and the presence of natural watercourses in proximity to urbanised areas, it is proposed that these areas be utilised for urban agricultural purposes. The concept of municipal commonage land must be identified and obtained through the Department of Land Affairs. These areas could be sub-let to individual beneficiaries.

In addition to the above programme, a number of Local Municipalities have land available which is classified as Municipal Townlands. Although large portions is being utilised for grazing purposes, it is believed that some portions could be more intensively used for small-scale farming.

In order to address and promote job creation and the development of viable agricultural practices, the following small-scale farm and commonage areas are proposed:

Municipal Area	Farm Portions
Sasolburg/Zamdela	Undetermined areas which could be used for grazing and small scale farming: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Saltberry Plain 442</li> <li>- Gysbert 115</li> <li>- Gysberthoek 315</li> <li>- Gorton A/1677</li> <li>- Beltrim 924</li> <li>- Bequest 1548</li> <li>- Portions of Moodraai 44</li> </ul>
Deneyville/ Refengkgotso	Subdivision 4 of the Farm Mooi-Plaats 581 and subdivision 1 of the Farm Rosendal 1406.
Oranjeville/Metsimaholo	A Portion of the Farm Vaaldam Settlement 1777, sub 28
Villiers/Qalabotjha	Prospect 278
Tweeling/Mafahlaneng	Farm Aasvogelkrans 105
Koppies/Kwakwatsi	Farm Lionriver 1 Plot 1018 of Koppies settlement.

The above areas have been identified in addition to existing commonage areas, or areas which have recently been acquired.

**D) Rural Residential/ Agriculture**

Small scale farming on smallholdings is latent, notwithstanding the fact that some potential exist adjacent to the urban areas of Sasolburg, Frankfort, Viljoenskroon and Parys. These areas are under increasing pressure to be utilized for non-rural activities.

In general the following principles must apply within the rural environment:

- Subdivision should not be allowed and only be merit based. This will prevent densification and the protection of underground water resources in view of the lack of potable water and sanitation systems;
- Small scale intensive agricultural activities need to be promoted;
- The programmes from the Department of Land Affairs should be implemented throughout the area;
- Agri-industries (large) should be established within the industrial areas of the respective urban centres and not on small holdings;
- Low density residential which will compliment the rural environment could be considered subject to environmental, infrastructure and geological requirements; and
- The development of low intensity tourism and hospitality uses.

#### **E) Land Reform**

There are large portions of underdeveloped or underutilized land within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality.

Although the process of land distribution is a dynamic process, and not linked to a specific locality, the following guidelines need to be considered during the promotion of the respective programmes:

- High potential agricultural land need to be targeted;
- On-going beneficiary capitation should occur;
- Partnerships need to be established with Farmer Unions which could assist empowerment and assistance programmes;
- Property ownership needs to be promoted.

#### **F) Rural Housing**

Housing within the rural environments is often very problematic and for such reasons it is important to give some guidance as to the respective housing options available.

In terms of the National Housing Programme for Farm Residents (National Department of Housing- March 2008), the options is as follows:

- **Policy Intent**

The programme aims to provide a flexible mechanism which will promote access to adequate housing, including basic services as a last resort option and secure tenure to farm workers and residents in the variety of farming situations across the country. In addition the programme aims to provide housing solutions to registered labour tenants on a project basis.

Bearing in mind the benefits of settlement in existing towns, where people have access to the full range of socio-economic facilities, this policy instrument must only be used as a last resort.

The programme aims to promote and development of sustainable human settlements through:

- A flexible approach to cater for the variety of farm worker housing needs across the country;
- The provision of secure tenure to farm workers;
- The promotion of healthy and safe living environments;
- The empowerment of farm worker (and in particular women) to participate in the provision of their own housing needs, as appropriate in the particular farming situation;
- Where possible, promoting access to social and economic amenities;
- Promoting access to economic opportunities not related to farming (particular when seasonal farm work is not available) (particularly when seasonal farm work is not available) for households where appropriate;
- The encouragement of sustainable spatial settlement patterns and discouraging the development of farm worker housing that places an additional service delivery burden on municipalities;
- The use of local labour and the development of skills in both developing and maintaining farm worker settlements; and
- The upgrading of existing farm worker housing and improving tenure security where feasible and practicable.

- **Policy Principles**

The following principles underpin the policy:

- Owing to the potential of the injudicious creation of unsustainable farm worker settlements to distort existing settlement patterns and increase municipal service delivery burdens (by creating a plethora of small settlements), the creation of new farm worker settlements, should be regarded as an option of last resort;
- Applications for off-farm worker housing subsidy assistance must be considered in the context of provincial and local planning frameworks (e.g. Provincial Development Plans and Municipal Integrated Development Plans (IDPs). Municipal capacity to provide development assistance and deliver services must also be paramount concern;
- In areas where workers (owing to the nature of the farming activity) have to be housed near to their places of employment and where commuting from the nearest town is not viable, preference should be given to options that provide security of tenure (including rental) to address the unequal power relations between the employer and the workers. These include the sub-division and transfer of land ownership to workers, share block schemes, and long term (99 year) lease agreements (which may provide rental opportunities);
- Where the sub-division of land and the transfer of ownership to farm workers is not feasible or desirable, consideration should be given to rental housing arrangements through instruments such as the Institutional Subsidy Programme or a project based rental housing development;
- If settlement is to take place outside of an existing town, an appropriate service delivery and maintenance agreement with the municipality must be in place before the project is implemented;
- Beneficiaries must participate in all aspects of the project, including the planning, governance and construction and maintenance (where appropriate);
- Specific emphasis shall be given in the implementation of the Programme to promoting the full participation of women farm workers and occupiers, and their primary involvement as beneficiaries.

- **Application of the Programme**

The programme will apply nationally.

The programme will only apply in instances where farm residents cannot be settled in existing towns and/or through any of the other National Housing Programmes such as the Individual Housing Subsidy Programme and/or the Integrated Residential Development Programme (IRDP).

The programme will therefore apply in the following circumstances:

- **On-Farm:** In this scenario the farm owner is prepared to provide housing opportunities on his/her land for his/her employees. In this case the following options will be available:
  - The application of a project based development for the provision of local basic water, storm water management system and sanitation services (only as a last resort option) and the construction of new houses or the upgrading/renovation of existing housing in compliance with the Ministerial National Norms and Standards contained in the Technical provisions of the National Housing Code with a rental tenure; or
  - The awarding of long term secure tenure rights to a housing institution which rights must be registered against the title deed of the farm, for the provision of rental housing only, in terms of a variation of the Institutional Housing Subsidy Programme.
- **Off-farm development in ownership of the beneficiaries by Farm owner, the municipality or by the beneficiaries themselves:** In this scenario the farm owner is prepared to sub-divide his/her land in small agricultural holdings, where prevailing legislation allows for such subdivision, and transfer these portions to individual farm residents. Each such sub-division must constitute a small agriculture holding. Therefore, each subdivision must include land for agricultural purposes and therefore excludes situations which constitute the establishment of “small residential townships” without following a township establishment process.

In this case the following options will be available:

- The application of a project based development to enable the farmer to act as developer for the provision of local basic water, stormwater management system and sanitation services (as an option of last resort) and the construction of new houses or the upgrading/renovation of existing structures in compliance with Ministerial National Norms and Standards contained in the Technical provisions of the National Housing Code for qualifying beneficiaries; or
  - Where the farm owner is not prepared to act as the “developer” the qualifying individual beneficiaries may approach the municipality as a collective and request the municipality to act as developer or they may appoint a private sector developer to undertake the housing development project on their behalf; or
  - Where the beneficiaries of the subdivided farm land wish to undertake their housing development themselves, they must establish a legal entity to represent them and they may decide to undertake the development of their farms through a Community Driven Housing Initiative as provided for in the relevant National Housing Programme.
- **Off-farm development where the beneficiaries received individual farm land in ownership through the Land Reform Programme of the Department of Land Affairs:** as contemplated by the Land Reform (Labour Tenants) Act, 1996. The Labour Tenant Strategy provides

labour tenant beneficiaries with access to productive land on the basis of registered ownership and or alternative secure tenure rights such as long term lease as well as access to infrastructure for agricultural purposes. These land reform programmes will not provide residential engineering services and housing opportunities to the beneficiaries of that programme. This programme may therefore be applied to provide access to funding for residential engineering services as a last resort and housing opportunities for beneficiaries of the Labour Tenant Strategy.

- ***Other Housing Subsidy Options Available Which Are Not Covered By This Programme***

• **Individual Subsidy**

This applies where beneficiaries are able to acquire ownership of improved serviced farm property. This would be the case where a landowner has donated land or where a portion of a farm has been bought by the farm occupier/worker using a land grant. In these instances, the property is subdivided and basic services have been installed. Title is transferred to the farm workers/occupiers. The rules and regulations of the Individual Housing Subsidy Programme as defined in the Housing Code will apply.

This subsidy can also be used where an improved property is to be acquired in a proclaimed township.

o **Project Based Subsidy**

Where normal residential development is to take place through a normal township establishment process.

o **Institutional Housing Subsidies**

This applies where the farm worker is prepared to subdivide his/her land and transfer the subdivided portion so created to a housing institution for residential development purposes. The housing institution will provide rental accommodation and/or deferred registered ownership tenure options (for four years) on the farm portion so acquired through the provisions of the normal Institutional Housing Subsidy Programme.

o **Accommodation for Seasonal Workers**

The programme will not apply to accommodate seasonal workers. The farm owner will be obliged to finance such accommodation from own resources.

The BNG set a new housing vision as follows: ***“To promote the achievement of a non-racial, integrated society through the development of sustainable human settlements and quality housing”***. As part of the broader vision, NDoH through the BNG aims to achieve the following objectives:

- Accelerate the delivery of housing as a key for poverty alleviation;
- Utilise the provision of housing as a major job creation strategy;
- Ensure that property can be accessed by all as an asset for wealth creation and empowerment;
- Leverage growth in the economy;
- Combat crime, promote social cohesion and improve quality of life of the poor;
- Support the functioning of the entire single residential property market to reduce; Duality within the sector by breaking the barriers between the first economies; residential property boom and the second economy slump; and
- Utilise housing as an instrument for the development sustainable humansettlements, in support of spatial restructuring

#### **8.2.4. Tourism**

The Fezile Dabi District Municipality comprise of a number of tourism attractions (historical, scenic, heritage and others) which need to be emphasised and marketed in order to promote job opportunities.

Tourism, eco-tourism and heritage have the potential to create wealth and job opportunities in Fezile Dabi District Municipality.

##### **8.2.4.1. Tourism Focus Areas**

Although there are a number of tourism activities within the District Municipality, the following areas provide an international interest and should therefore be marketed as tourism focus areas:

##### **A) *Vaal River Tourist Zone***

The Vaal River forms the northern boundary of the Fezile Dabi District Municipality and stretches along ±350km. along the river frontage there are a number of attributes and urban centres which need to be promoted in support of this natural asset. The urban centres of Villiers, Oranjeville, Deneysville, Viljoensdrif, Sasolburg, Parys and Vredefort are all located adjacent or in close proximity to the Vaal River, Vredefort Dome Heritage Site and the Vaal Dam.

The tourism potential of the area should be enhanced focussing on low-density residential development on the Vaal Dam and River riparian areas and “Recreation and Tourist”- attractions as identified in the Vaal River Complex Guide Plan (1982). The Vaal River Complex Guide Plan is a statutory document regulating land use along the Vaal Dam and a section of the Vaal River, which does address and manage conservation issues. Specific portions of riparian areas within the said guide plan are zoned as “Nature Areas” and “Open Spaces”, which do imply measures of conservation control.

The Vaal Dam Zoning Plan was commissioned and approved by the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry during 2001 (See insert on **Map 14**), where a number of development zones were proposed. These are:

- Conservation Zones;
- Medium/low density development zone;
- High Density Development Zone;
- Security Zone.

From the above Development zones, it is evident that development adjacent to the Vaal Dam could be varied in terms of extent, type and locality.

In addition to the above, the areas should receive attention:

- (i) Continuous developed and effective marketing of the Stokkiesdraai, Wawiel Park and Renovaal recreation and holiday resorts adjacent the Vaal River in the Viljoenskroon District and the Parys urban area that are becoming popular tourist destinations.
- (ii) Abrahamsrust Resort located in Sasolburg and the Jim Fouché Resort located between Oranjeville and Villiers adjacent the Vaal Dam are prominent tourist related public resorts in the area that also need to be exploited for its tourism potential continuously.
- (iii) Smaller private resorts.

#### ***B) Vredefort Dome Heritage Site***

The establishment development and promotion of the Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site in the proximity of Parys will ensure effective conservation and the development of tourism potential. A map, indicating the Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site is attached indicating the proposed “Core Area” and the 5km “Buffer Area”.

An Inter Provincial Team between the Free State Province and North West Province is in the process to develop a Local Spatial Development Framework and Land Use Management Guidelines for the Vredefort Dome area.

#### **8.2.4.2. Supporting Tourism Activities per Local Municipality**

##### ***A) Ngwathe Local Municipality***

In addition to the Vaal River and Vredefort Dome, which has been identified as one of the primary focus area, the following activities need to be linked to the tourism “value chain”:

- o Eco/agri tourism (including guesthouse industry)
  - Low density tourist related activities – non permanent residing
  - Conservancies;
  - Walking trails;
  - Bicycle trails;
  - Four wheel drive routes;
  - Bird watching;
  - Angling.

- Continuous development and effective marketing and management of the Koppies Dam Nature Reserve and the Rooipoort Nature Reserve.
- Effective management and development of the concerned dams in the area that offer popular recreational and tourism opportunities.
- The two historically important tourist attractions in the area related to the Anglo Boer War, should be maintained and developed. (Vredefort Dome).
- In view of the network of National and Provincial roads throughout the area, all the respective urban areas were identified as Tourism nodes in view of the higher order integrated facilities which these centres can provide.
- Vaal River Islands near Parys.

### ***B) Moqhaka Local Municipality***

In view of the strategic locality of the urban centres, these areas need to develop as both commercial and tourism focus areas. As part of the strategy, economic activities will be focussed to create centralised destinations along major corridors. These primary tourism and commercial attractions are located in:

- Kroonstad; and
- Viljoenskroon.

Apart from providing a higher order service centre to agricultural practices, these urban nodes must intercept through traffic and provide tourism related activities such as guest houses, arts and craft centres, commercial facilities and the promotion of natural assets.

The urban tourism nodes must be linked to attractions such as:

- Number of Dams (Serfontein Dam, Bloemhoek Dam) conservation areas within Municipal area;
- Vredefort Dome (Heritage Site);
- Vals River;
- Existing Resorts (Stokkiesdraai and Wawielpark).

### ***C) Metsimaholo Local Municipality***

In view of the large number of through traffic, the strategy is as follows:

- Intercept tourists at the urban areas by providing tourism related activities. These areas will also serve as primary tourism nodes;
- Promote other tourism activities in the area, namely the flower farm and various game farms;
- Promote the respective linkage roads between the urban areas as tourism corridors. Along these corridors a number of arts and crafts; and farm-stalls could be establish to intercept the buying power of through travel;
- As the area is extensive in rural nature, the towns form the focal point of activity. These towns can provide activities which are focussed on tourism development (guesthouses, restaurants, locally produced goods and arts/crafts from the local community);

- Joint co-operation with the Sedibeng District Municipality;
- The marketing of resorts along the Vaal River. These include boating, recreational and special venues.

#### **D) Mafube Local Municipality**

Within Mafube Local Municipality a number of existing and proposed activities exist which need to be developed and promoted. The activities are as follows:

- Wilge Park;
- Eco-tourism;
- Farm Holidays;
- Holiday resorts adjacent to the Vaal River;
- Caravan Park in Frankfort;
- Game farming;
- Promotion of the Hospitality industry; and
- The Franklin Creek Conservancy.

#### **8.2.4.3. Implementation Guidelines**

The following aspects need to be addressed:

- The establishment of a defined “tourism” value chain where tourists need to stay longer than 1 day in the area. Activities need to be defined and linked to each other;
- The establishment of defined “Tourism” corridors. This was discussed in more detail under Section 6.2.2.2. (Corridors);
- **Gateways and entry points** – these points need to be well defined when entering the Municipality, parks etc;
- **Routes** – Tourists travel along routes to reach their destinations. They don’t necessarily take the shortest and quickest route, but rather tend to balance the effort of getting there with the quality of the experience and safety;
- **Staging Posts** – Staging posts are places where tourists stop to rest or stay overnight for the journey ahead;
- **Destinations** – Destinations are usually a cluster of attractions and support infrastructure. A destination needs to have a compelling product, access and viable support infrastructure;
- **Distribution point** – Tourists need to travel to something in a destination. The distribution point within the destination becomes a critical link within the overall experience as it serves as a major source of information, direction and focus;

#### **8.2.5. Conservation**

The Fezile Dabi District Municipality comprise of a large rural component which offers a number of opportunities linked to the natural resources of the area. Some of these features include:

- The Vaal River;
- Numerous river systems;
- Natural grassland;
- A number of conservancies;
- Wooded areas (Vredefort Dome);
- Areas of natural beauty; and
- Red Data Species.

The following environmental and conservation guidelines need to be applied within the urbanized, social and ecological environments.

#### **8.2.5.1. Urbanized Areas**

Due to the increasing population, urban expansion and development is inevitable. However, urban expansion encroaches upon habitats with potentially high biodiversity as well as on land with high agricultural potential. Strategic land use planning in Fezile Dabi District Municipality need to be based on information as contained within the Environmental Studies, discouraging development in environmentally sensitive areas while earmarking other, more suitable areas for development.

The urbanized areas of Fezile Dabi District Municipality is characterized by a large number of river systems which runs through the respective towns, namely Vals River (Kroonstad), Olifantsvlei (Viljoenskroon), "Ja se Spruit" (Steynsrus), Elandspruit (Heilbron), Lesotho Spruit (Vredefort), Rooikraal Spruit (Edenville), Oudewerfpruit (Parys), Wilge River (Oranjeville), Vaal River (Villiers) and Libenbergsvlei River (Tweeling). These river systems need to be protected from pollution and encroachment by formal developments.

#### **A) Residential**

- **Formal Residential Development**

Home owners will be encouraged to create indigenous gardens within existing residential areas.

Proposed new residential areas will be evaluated, based on their potential impact, whether positive or negative, on the environment. "Environment" in this sense of the word includes the natural, economic, and social environment as well as the general sense of place. Residential development in environmentally sensitive areas and areas with high agricultural potential will be discouraged. Areas not suitable for residential development due to geological, hydrological and other constraints such

as a lack of infrastructure need to be identified. “No-Go” areas will be “red flagged” and development role players will be made aware of this up-front.

Sufficient open space areas need to be retained within new residential developments and where possible kept natural. Landowners should be encouraged to maintain their properties and keep them as natural and indigenous as possible, creating linkages with neighbouring properties and therefore establishing a natural habitat potential in the area. Where possible, natural habitats should not be disturbed.

Problem areas such as the agricultural holdings need to be addressed with specific control measures, especially in dealing with illegal land uses on those properties.

- **Informal Residential Development**

The growth of existing informal settlements and the establishment of new settlements need to be avoided at all costs. These settlements have a negative impact due to the lack of infrastructure and basic services. Pollution in these areas is generally high. It is therefore important that these areas be formalised and that, where possible, basic services be provided.

Education, especially with regard to the impact of pollution on the natural and social environment, should be encouraged and facilitated, informing these communities of the possible impacts and how to address these in a responsible manner. Education will contribute to the general upliftment of these communities.

## **B) Industrial / Commercial**

A desired environment should include an area free of or within minimum pollution (air, water, noise, ground). Industries need to be restricted to these areas earmarked for such purposes. Non-agricultural related industrial activities on farms and agricultural holdings should be discouraged. Strict pollution mechanisms should be implemented and adhered to, especially in sensitive areas such as along water courses. Environmental Management Plans need to be formulated for all industries and will be monitored on a regular basis by an appointed and dedicated environmental management officer (EMO).

## **C) Agriculture**

Informal agricultural activities are found on farms and small holdings and formal, commercial agricultural activities on the larger farms. Commercial farming activities take up the largest land within Fezile Dabi District Municipality and include crop and animal production. Agriculture plays an important role in the local economy and general survival of the area. All farming activities have some level of environmental impact owing to the disturbance of natural habitats (e.g. Ploughing, intensive fertilisation and groundwater extraction).

It is desirable that all large existing commercial farming enterprises should formulate Environmental Management Plans which need to will be monitored by an EMO on a regular basis, ensuring that the impacts remain at a minimum. New enterprises will undergo an

environmental impact assessment process in order to determine the positive and negative impacts of such an enterprise on the greater environment. Farmers should be educated and informed of all natural habitats and those with high biodiversity values. They need to be encouraged not to disturb these habitats in any way and to conserve them at all costs and especially not to cultivate along water courses. Fragmentation of remaining pristine natural habitats should be prevented. No exotic vegetation must be introduced into these areas.

Subdivision of agricultural land, especially moderate to high potential agricultural land, should be discouraged and not supported.

#### **D) Mining**

There are a large number of mining activities/operations (Diamond, coal, sand, gold) within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality (Viljoenskroon, Sasolburg).

All new mining enterprises will be preceded by a comprehensive environmental impact process accompanied by an environment management plan which specifically addresses the site establishment, access, services, pollution control, vegetation removal and rehabilitation. Such EMP's will also be required for all existing mining activities.

Measures will be put in place to ensure that all mines comply with legislation and that their impact on the environment is mitigated.

#### **E) Road Network**

The road network within and around Fezile Dabi District Municipality is generally in a good condition, although a number of roads require upgrading (Refer to Section 8.2.6). The desired state of road infrastructure should be that all roads are upgraded and that sufficient funding is available to maintain the road network. Furthermore, construction of all new roads and any other transportation infrastructure must adhere to environmental legislation requirements, which, *inter alia*, will include an environmental impact assessment and environmental management plan.

#### **F) Engineering Infrastructure and Waste Management**

Engineering services within the study area should be of an adequate standard before any new developments or densification may be permitted. Services such as water reticulation and waste management (sewage disposal, solid waste) are particularly important, since large portions within the study area have not been serviced. The lack of waterborne sewage systems in certain areas, especially the densely populated informal settlements, is worrying as this could have major negative environmental impacts. A backlog exists in the Fezile Dabi District Municipality in the provision of water and sanitation and is mainly situated in the informal areas.

The desired environment will be one where all urban areas are serviced sufficiently with water, sanitation, electricity, waste and stormwater management. Impacts of new service infrastructure on the environment need to be investigated before such infrastructure is installed. It will need to ensure that Sewerage Treatment Works (Water Care Works) and landfills have sufficient capacity to accommodate new developments in order to avoid pollution in all forms.

### 8.2.5.2. Ecological

#### A) Biodiversity

The natural areas in Fezile Dabi District Municipality have been substantially changed by human activities, notably formal agriculture (crop and livestock production) and urbanisation, resulting in major habitat loss throughout the area. However, patches of relatively pristine natural areas still remain. The desired state of the environment in terms of biodiversity is discussed under two sub-headings, namely manmade and natural habitats.

##### o **Manmade Habitats**

Although landscaped gardens are unnatural, a number of species find suitable survival opportunities here. These habitats are largely unappreciated as heavens for fauna which in fact could actually be improved with the planting of plants indigenous to the area. Landowners within these areas should be encouraged to introduce indigenous vegetation with a gradual replacement of all exotic species. Even public areas and open spaces need to be kept natural and if landscaped, indigenous vegetation to be utilised.

The rural landscape is typified by plantations and thickets of alien trees, commonly blue gum, poplar and wattle. Dense stands of alien trees normally result in sterile environments. Land owners need to be encouraged to remove all alien vegetation over time and to replace it with indigenous vegetation. This will automatically attract indigenous vertebrates and over time, positively restore the once sterile environments.

Monoculture crop fields dominate the rural landscape in Fezile Dabi District Municipality. These fields are devastating to fauna and flora. Whichever plants or animals manage to survive the effect of growing grains is more coincidental than anything else, probably as a consequence of small patches of natural growth. Biodiversity is therefore very low in these areas.

Mining activities such as mine dumps, slimes dams, quarrying and sand mining cause barren surfaces which are alien to endemic biota. This type of environment is absolutely hostile to the indigenous fauna and only occasional strays may be encountered peripherally before thorough rehabilitation has taken place. Areas which have been affected by mining activity will be rehabilitated to such an extent that over time the biodiversity will increase. Any application for a new mining related activity must undergo all the relevant environmental impact assessment processes as stipulated in legislation, so as to determine the level of impact on the natural environment. Such developments will follow strict environmental management plans and regular environmental audits will be done.

#### B) Natural Habitats

##### o **Water Bodies and Wetlands**

There are a number of dams and wetlands such as the Vaal Dam, Koppies Dam, Rooipoort Dam, Uniefees Dam, Siefontein Dam, Bloemhoek Dam and Strydom Dam, together with their wetlands which need to be protected.

Bodies of permanent water are very important habitats for vertebrates and invertebrates. They are especially important to birds, many with Red Data status. They need to be kept undeveloped with adequate buffer zones around them. Pollution should be monitored on an ongoing basis and polluted water bodies will be rehabilitated and/or remediate.

No development should occur within the 1:100 year floodline area.

- **Highveld Grasslands**

Natural grasslands are mostly used for grazing and are by far the most prominent natural habitat in Fezile Dabi District Municipality. Fragmentation of natural grasslands is becoming a concern. Grassland vegetation has a very high biodiversity value and the remaining pockets should be conserved as far as possible since very little of the vegetation type is formally conserved in conservation areas. This vegetation type is very sensitive and no development or change in status (e.g. by irrigation) should be allowed. Management of grassland vegetation such as burning programmes and removal of exotic plants need to be implemented. Sub-division of these natural grassland areas should not be permitted.

- **Woodland Savanna, Ridges**

Woodland savanna is most prominent in ravines. Without the benefit of detailed assessment, these habitats are probably centres of high biological diversity and no development or change in status should be allowed.

Rocky outcrops coupled with mountainous slopes offer habitats for narrowly adapted vertebrates and invertebrates relying of rock dwelling lifestyles. This habitat type is very sensitive and no development or change in status should be allowed.

- **Geology, Topography and Surface Hydrology**

The Koppies and ridges of the Vredefort Dome are characterized by steep and rugged topography, and are impressive topographical features in the study area which are not suitable for development or for cultivation of agricultural crops. However, they harbour diverse habitats and should be conserved.

As far as surface hydrology is concerned, a number of important perennial rivers run through the area. These rivers need be protected and management plans should be implemented and monitored by a qualified environmental control officer.

Large-scale developments which could possibly have negative impacts on the natural land form need to be avoided. All natural tributaries and floodplains as well as the natural open spaces created by these, need to be maintained as natural as possible.

Natural floodplains and water courses should be protected and not be altered by means of unauthorised excavations and vehicle movement. Natural vegetation along these water courses need to be protected and the removal of any to be restricted. Invasive, exotic vegetation in these areas need to be removed responsibly, especially along drainage systems.

Erosion control measures need to be implemented, especially where areas have been altered and affected through agricultural activities. Geo-technical studies will assess soil suitability for any future developments and relevant mitigation and control measures shall be adhered to according to the findings of these studies.

○ **Agricultural Potential**

A great variation in soil types, and consequently in agricultural potential, is found throughout the Fezile Dabi District Municipality study area. The areas surrounding wetland and along watercourses are characterised by wet, clayish soils which should not be cultivated.

Areas in which moderate to high potential agricultural land is found will be earmarked for agriculture, especially where portions of land are economically viable tracts of land. Subdivision of agricultural land need to be restricted. Areas of high environmental sensitivity to be utilised only for low impact agricultural purposes such as grazing.

## **8.2.6. Regional Infrastructure**

The proposal with reference to regional infrastructure is as follows:

### **8.2.6.1. Moghaka Local Municipality**

#### ***A) Railway (Passenger/Goods)***

With regard to the existing rail system through the area, the following is proposed:

- The significance of a proper road network is emphasised by the fact that many railway stations are not in operation and road transportation is the only means of transporting agricultural products.
- No specific stations have, however, been identified to be operational in the future.
- A need has been identified to investigate the feasibility to utilise the railway service more optimally as a commuting service in the region.

#### ***B) National Air Freight Hub and Dry Harbour Facility (Kroonstad Airfield)***

The Kroonstad airfield is ideally located for upgrading to a national air freight hub and dry harbour facility.

Its location is ideal in close proximity and with a direct access to the N1 National Road. Sufficient and suitable land is also available for future extension.

#### ***C) Roads***

The well developed character of the region is a direct result of it being serviced by means of a strategically important road network.

Although the regional network seems adequate in terms of its provision of access, certain sections thereof require upgrading.

A well maintained road network is imperative to stimulate development and to ensure effective access and linkage in the district. The deteriorating condition of tar and gravel roads, as a result of irregular maintenance, is a tangible concern in the area. All the gravel secondary roads are specifically in a deteriorating condition and have been identified for upgrading.

#### **8.2.6.2. Ngwathe Local Municipality**

##### ***A) Railway***

The significance of a proper road network is emphasized by the fact that many railway stations are not in operation and road transportation is the only means of transporting agricultural products.

Specific stations have, however, not been identified to be operational in the future.

##### ***B) Airfields***

Parys comprise a fairly well developed airfield, but has limited expansion possibilities. The development of certain commercial activities and or an area of mixed uses (also the possibility of a so called "fly in estate" that are relevant to aviation and an effective transport node) in the vicinity of the airport could, however, be considered.

Koppies has a registered airfield, but is not properly maintained. The effective maintenance of the airfield is imperative to support the tourism potential of the Koppies area and will further become relevant if coal mining commence in the proximity of the Koppies town area.

##### ***C) Roads***

The deteriorating condition of tar and gravel roads, as a result of irregular maintenance, is a tangible concern in the area. All the gravel secondary roads are specifically in a deteriorating condition and have been identified for upgrading.

The following roads have been identified for future upgrading:

Urban Area	Road Requirement
Edenville	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An additional access to Ngwathe will improve accessibility from the major road network, specifically with the residential extension to the south of Ngwathe.</li> <li>• Formalise access to Ngwathe from Heuningspruit Road.</li> </ul>
Heilbron	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upgrading of road S 44 between Heilbron and Oranjeville.</li> <li>• Upgrading of road S 163 between Heilbron and Koppies improving access to Koppies Dam Nature Reserve.</li> <li>• Proposed road (P 95/3) through Heilbron industrial area.</li> <li>• Urgent upgrading of the Heilbron/Framkfort Road (R34).</li> </ul>
Koppies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upgrading of R 720 from N1 to road R721.</li> </ul>
Parys	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upgrading of the former N1 route through the CBD.</li> <li>• Upgrading of the N1 alternative road via Koppies to Kroonstad should urgently be upgraded.</li> <li>• Upgraded of the existing secondary R 723 road between Parys and Heilbron.</li> </ul>
Vredefort	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upgrading of the secondary road between Vredefort and Potchefstroom via Skananawiee/Schoemansdrif Vaal River crossing.</li> <li>• Upgrading of the former N1 route through the CBD.</li> </ul>

### 8.2.6.3. Mafube Local Municipality

#### A) *Railway*

In view of the significant rail system which runs through the area, the following is proposed:

- The significance of a proper road network is emphasised by the fact that some of the railway stations are not in operation in so far as passenger services are concerned although freight and transportation of agricultural goods services are still active.
- A need has been identified for the operation of the Villiers railway station for specifically freight transportation.
- The possible establishment of an Ethanol plant at Frankfort will necessitate the upgrading of the existing railway network.

**B) Roads**

- The existing national and primary road networks provide effective access in the study area. A well maintained road network is imperative to stimulate development and to ensure effective access and linkage in the district.
- The deteriorating condition of tar and gravel roads, as a result of irregular maintenance is a concern in the area. All the gravel secondary roads are specifically in a deteriorating condition and have been identified for upgrading.
- It is proposed that all available funds be utilised to maintain as many gravel secondary roads as possible instead of constructing new roads.
- Roads in Deneysville, Oranjeville and Frankfort need upgrading

**8.2.6.4. Metsimaholo Local Municipality**

**A) Railway**

The significance of a proper road network is emphasized by the fact that some of the railway stations are not in operation in so far as passenger services are concerned although freight and transportation of agricultural goods and services are still active.

The importance of the railway line should not be overlooked and Spoornet should be approached to extend its current Metro Services to Sasolburg.

**B) Airfields**

The possibility exists for the establishment of an airfield located within Metsimaholo.

**C) Roads**

The following road is proposed to be upgraded:

Urban Area	Road Requirements
Sasolburg	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proposed eastern bypass (P 83/1) linking Zamdela and Sasol industrial area with Gauteng, or</li> <li>• Alternatively the extension of Jan Haak road with a similar purpose.</li> <li>• Investigation regarding the Naledi/Chem City Development Corridor (Sections of roads P 10/1, P 10/2, P 38/1).</li> <li>• Investigation regarding Minnaar Street/Vaal River Corridor improving access to Vaal Park and the Vaal River.</li> <li>• Long-term partial upgrading of the Koppies road (P 30/1) as future access road to future southern extensions of</li> </ul>

	Zamdela.
Deneysville	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Proposed future bypass road to the west of Refengkgotso. Should residential extension occur further west, realignment thereof will become evident.</li> <li>A section of Road P44/2 stretching through Refengkgotso should be deproclaimed and utilised as an internal collector road.</li> </ul>
Oranjeville	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Long term upgrading of the road between Deneysville and Villiers, running through Oranjeville including the Magrieta Prinsloo Bridge (completion of the new bridge partially constructed).</li> <li>The Oranjeville /Heilbron secondary road (S44) is identified as an important link and proposed for upgrading from a gravel road.</li> </ul>

### **8.2.7. Urban Spatial Elements**

A number of urban spatial elements have been discussed within the respective Local Municipal Spatial Development Frameworks, which include:

- Residential and Housing;
- Business and Commercial;
- Industrial;
- Open Spaces, Sport, Recreation and Tourism;
- Social Services (Cemeteries, education, health, other).

Although the detail proposals of each of the above elements will not be discussed in this document (refer to detail Local Municipal, Spatial Development Framework's), it is however important that some development guidelines be proposed in the District Municipal Spatial Development Framework, which should be considered in addressing the respective aspects.

#### **8.2.7.1. Residential Development**

The view of the large housing need ( $\pm$  16000 sites) within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality, consideration should be given to the following guidelines.

##### ***A) Objectives***

The following objectives should be adhered to when addressing residential development:

- Correction of historically distorted spatial patterns;
- Promotion of spatial integration ;
- Promotion of a diverse combination of land uses in support of each other;

- Discouragement of urban sprawl and the promotion of more compact urban towns;
- Optimization of the use of existing resources, including bulk infrastructure; and
- The introduction of different housing typologies.

### ***B) Guidelines***

The establishment of townships and densification within the existing urban structure is conducted in terms of a legal framework regardless of income or race. The difference between the respective residential typologies vests primarily with the funding organisation, where middle to higher income residential developments are funded by the private sector and the lower income developments funded by the public sector (BNG).

Densification within existing urban structure is primarily conducted by way of rezoning (change of zoning from Residential 1 to Residential 2/3 – Townhouses) or subdivision (subdivision of an erf as dictated by the density requirements of the Town Planning Scheme). Township establishment is conducted on Farm land in terms of the Townships Ordinance, 1969.

The provision of affordable housing is the responsibility of National, Provincial and Local Government. Although the primary responsibility vests with the Public Sector, a number of agreements have been entered into with the Private Sector (Financial Sector) to assist with the delivery of integrated housing developments. The challenge is to go beyond the provision of mass housing but to build communities and create conditions which will promote economic and community sustainability. In addressing new developments, the following criteria need to be considered:

- Availability of bulk infrastructure;
- Ownership of land;
- Access to social amenities and economic opportunities;
- Access to public transport; and
- Integration of the urban structure.

As part of the development areas, a mix of housing typologies at higher densities need to be established which will ultimately create more sustainable and liveable communities that are better suited for demographic and cultural diversity. This is in line with the “Breaking New Ground” policy of the government.

## **8.2.7.2. Commercial and Industrial Development**

### ***A) Principles***

With the respective urban Centres linked to functionality, it is imperative that these areas be promoted as such.

However, notwithstanding the above, all of the urban centres have Central Business Districts and industrial areas which vary in nature and extent. In the development of these areas, the following elements need to be considered:

- The majority of the CBD's are underdeveloped in terms of bulk, and future development should rather focus to maximize undeveloped buildings and vacant land. Rather strengthen existing CBD's as opposed to encourage sprawl;
- Some higher order retail and commercial activities need to be developed in historically disadvantaged areas (where required), without compromising existing sustainable CBD's;
- Vacant industrial sites (if owned by the Municipalities) need to be marketed by way of introducing incentive schemes; and
- Where industrial stands are required new areas need to be identified.

### **B) Incentives**

In order to promote and facilitate economic growth within the respective urban nodes, it is proposed that an incentive scheme be investigated and submitted to the respective Municipalities for consideration. Some of the incentives to be investigated will entail:

- Tax Incentives (Municipal Tax rebates);
- Land Incentives (where Municipal owned land can be made available to the Developer);
- Bulk Infrastructure (where developer will obtain reduction to bulk services contribution);
- Development Rights (where higher land use rights are allocated in specific areas).

### **C) Informal Trade**

Although the informal traders play a vital function within the economic domain by providing jobs and generating a basic income, a number of guiding principles need to be set and implemented to reduce conflict situations with the public-and private sector. These principles are as follows:

- Identified trading areas need to be demarcated within the CBD and other areas (taxi ranks) in order to minimise pedestrian and hawkers conflicts;
- Informal traders should not occupy space in front of formal business shop windows or under overhangs/balconies as this would cause inconvenience to pedestrian movement and passive shopping;
- Informal traders should not conduct trade at the intersections of roads as it impedes on traffic regulations (sight distance);
- Narrow sidewalks should not be used for informal trading;
- Informal traders should be registered and managed in terms of a Association;
- No formal business should sell goods outside it's premises on the sidewalks;
- Certain types of goods which are being sold should be mixed, for example, the cutting of hair next to cooked food stalls;
- Proper storage, cleaning and toilet facilities should be investigated and implemented by the Local Municipality.

Although the above guidelines are only a directive, it is proposed that detailed "Hawkers By-Laws" be prepared in conjunction with all stakeholders (Local Municipality, formal business and informal traders).

#### ***D) Homebased Activities***

With the emphasis on economic growth and job creation, a large number of smaller homebased economic activities are evident within the urban and rural environment.

These activities fulfil an important function insofar as it addresses the day to-day household needs of the residents and it provides the opportunity for small entrepreneurs to operate from home.

Notwithstanding the above, the following practices must be guarded against:

- That the type of activity does not become the dominant activity on the residential site. The primary activity should remain to be residential;
- The home activity should not be detrimental to the surrounding residential environment from a noise, traffic generation and small point of view ; and
- No noxious and industrial activities should be allowed, for example, scrap yards, paint booth's and motor repair shops.

Activities such as taverns and restaurants should be encouraged to locate along development corridors or within Central Business Districts.

#### **8.2.7.3. Open Spaces**

The provision of open space and recreation within Fezile Dabi District Municipality can be divided into 2 categories, namely passive and active open space.

##### ***A) Passive Open Space***

An open space system fulfils a number of functions, which include hazard avoidance, resource conservation, ensuring social well-being and educational, was discussed under Section 6.2.5.

##### ***B) Active Open Spaces***

Within the respective urban concentrations in Fezile Dabi District Municipality, there are a large number of public open spaces which is either not developed or poorly developed, notwithstanding the need for more formalized activities/facilities within primarily historically disadvantaged areas.

Active open space involves the recreational component of the open space system. For example, it provides sport facilities or it can simply provide a public square where people can gather and socialize.

Formulating principles for the development of active open spaces can help ensure that standards of quality and usefulness are achieved in the planning, design and management of such spaces. The following development principles need to be taken into account when developing an active open space network within the respective Local Municipality.

- **Development and Maintenance Costs**

An important factor in determining the number and size of active open spaces mainly relates to the development and maintenance costs thereof. In other words, the number of active open spaces that are developed should not exceed the budget available to develop such open spaces. Also, there must be sufficient funds to maintain these open spaces over the long run.

Past experience has proved that active open spaces that are not fully developed and maintained often lose their practical value to local residents. Therefore, it is argued that smaller and fewer active open spaces that are reasonably developed and maintained are far more useful than a large number of active open spaces that are not.

- **Type of Facilities Provided**

When planning active open spaces, it is important that appropriate recreation facilities are provided. Often recreational facilities are provided that do not fulfil the needs of the community, usually because they are not the preferred recreational types. To prevent the provision of inappropriate recreational facilities, the recreational preferences of a local community must be established before planning and developing a recreational facility. On the other hand, often communities do not participate in certain recreation types, simply because they never had access to such facilities to learn the sport. One way to overcome this is to have such sport facilities share facilities with the more popular sports. For example, cricket should be played on combined soccer fields or a soccer field should double as a rugby field.

- **Accessibility of Active Open Spaces**

When locating active open spaces, it is important to ensure that they are accessible to the larger community. Various criteria apply when locating active open spaces. For example, if a higher order active open space serves a residential area, this open space should be located within the most central location of the area, so that this active open space is located within walking distance of the largest portion of the population of the residential area. The residential area that does not have access to such an active open space should be linked by means of defined walkways with the settlement that does. It is also advisable that an active open space be centrally located within a residential area and not on its fringe, to ensure the continued presence of people in the vicinity of such a facility to protect it from vandalism.

- **Urban Form and Function**

Active open spaces can be used to develop the proposed community nodes by forming part of its land use structure. By doing this, the focal function of these nodes is enhanced. It is important that the mentioned focal function be enhanced through the design of these active open spaces. For example, the planting of trees along the periphery of an active open space will enhance the identity and attractiveness of the open space.

If active open spaces are integrated through design with the other facilities within a community node, it will enhance the usage of these open spaces and enhance the viability of the other land uses in these nodes. For example, if an active open space that contains recreation facilities were located next to the schools, it would automatically be accessible and available to the schools for use during the week. Placing it close to a retail facility will ensure that during weekend sport events, spectators will have easy access to local businesses for refreshments, thus benefiting the local economy.

#### **8.2.7.4. Social Development**

##### ***A) Development Principles***

With the proposed housing developments within Fezile Dabi District Municipality, the provision of complimentary activities such as schools, clinics, recreation and other activities is important to create sustainable living environments. At present there is a large need for activities such as libraries, clinics and other social facilities.

Apart from the larger proposed residential development areas within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality, where sites are being made available for social facilities, a large number of infill and densification development areas have been identified within the existing urban environment, thus limiting the space left for the increased requirements for social amenities.

This issue can be dealt with in the following ways:

- **Increase capacity of community facilities and schools**

A significant way of increasing the supply of community facilities without substantially increasing the land needed for community facilities is to increase the capacity of community facilities and schools. For example, this implies developing additional building space vertically and horizontally, over an above that which is normally provided for a specific community facility.

- **Develop vacant community and schools stands on the fringe of the Study Area**

Often, many formal areas have stands zoned for community facilities and schools, but have not yet been developed. The development of those facilities can, not only alleviate the need for schools in that area, but also the need for schools in Fezile Dabi District Municipality, thus reducing the number of schools needed within. It is often argued that the standard for the provision of schools is too high, which implies that developing all these stands should create enough capacity to also serve other areas.

- **Use schools in an area of demographic shift**

Typically, residential areas go through demographic shifts. In other words, on average households in older residential areas would be older than households in newer residential areas. This implies that the households in older areas have less children of school-going age than households in newer residential areas. In turn, this implies that the needed for schools would be less in older residential areas than in newer residential areas. Taking the above into account, it can be argued that the existing schools in those older areas should have spare capacity for an increase in residential densities in neighbouring areas.

- **Zoned additional community and schools stands in new township areas**

One of the implantation strategies of the Local Municipalities Spatial Development Framework is to create pockets of higher-density housing that are linked to and make full use of public transportation systems. To achieve this objective and fully capitalize on the advantages of the strategic locations of these areas, it may be necessary to provide the necessary community facilities in new, peripheral areas surrounding these areas. In other words, it will involve supplying additional facilities within these areas, over-and-above that which is required in that specific area.

- **Share sport facilities of schools**

One way of reducing the land needed for schools is to have schools share sport facilities. For example, a secondary school and 2 primary schools can share sport facilities. Because sport facilities use up large parcels of land, this measure can significantly reduce the gross densities within an area, thus allowing the development of the higher density infill housing project.

#### **8.2.8. Mining**

There are a number of mining operations active within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality, complimented by the fact that large areas have been undetermined (Metsimaholo Local Municipality) and that some areas have been left stagnant in view of mineral rights (no surface activities is taking place).

The following areas within the Fezile Dabi District Municipality are influenced by existing and future mining activities:

- Continuous development and exploitation of the Vaal Reefs Gold Mines adjacent to the Vaal River provides future economic growth potential in the Viljoenskroon area;
- Diamond deposits in the vicinity of Kroonstad (Lace and Voorspoed Mines);
- De Beers commenced with the redevelopment of two mining areas (Voorspoed);
- Sand wining from a number of rivers (Vaal, Vals);
- Gravel is exploited throughout the area for construction materials;
- Limited alluvial diamond exploration along the Vaal River;
- There are vast portions of the region (Ngwathe) which is underlain by coal, but at present not financially viable to mine(depth);
- Granite formulations in the Parys area;
- Betonite deposits in the Koppies area;
- Large areas within the Sasolburg area is being used for coal mining. The continuation of the coal industry has seriously been reconsidered as the transportation of earth gas to Sasolburg is becoming a more viable option;
- Large ash dumps (Sasolburg).

In terms of the above activities, it is evident that mining activities is very prominent in the area (existing and future) and has a major impact on the establishment of job opportunities. In addition and supplementary to the aforementioned, the following is proposed:

- That local residents be given preference for employment when new activities commence;
- That supporting activities (manufacturing, processing) be established in the area, where possible. This would ensure that the manufacturing and services sector will grow, thereby ensuring more job creation;
- That all mining operations be made subject to the relevant environmental approvals as required by legislation (National Environmental Management Act);
- That the rehabilitation of sand winning, gravel and mining operations be strictly enforced by the authorities; and
- That large mining areas rights (permits) and areas where undermining has taken place be utilized for extensive agricultural activities.

## **CHAPTER 9: ALIGNMENT AND PROJECTS**

### **9.1. Alignment with District Municipal Objectives**

In terms of the primary objectives of the above documents it is important to ascertain to which extent the Fezile Dabi District Municipality Spatial Development Framework has given spatial expression to the objectives. In the assessment it is important to note the following:

- Not all objectives can be indicated spatially (institutional and human resource elements);
- Not all the detail elements of the respective Local Municipal Spatial Development Framework's were captured. The Fezile Dabi District Municipality Spatial Development Framework is addressing elements in a more holistic nature.

The alignment is indicated in Table 9.1 below:

**Table 9.1: Alignment with District Municipal Objectives**

Strategic Objective	Key Elements	Fezile Dabi District Municipality Spatial Development Framework
A) <u>Economic Growth, Development and Unemployment</u> (Local Economic Development)	A) <u>Urban Areas</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Categorize the urbanized areas in terms of functionality, thereby promoting the establishment of supporting activities (manufacturing, processing and services)</li> <li>• Provided guidelines to address housing delivery, utilization of Public Open Spaces, Social Facilities and environmental aspects).</li> </ul>
	B) <u>Local Economic Development</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provided guidelines to promote job creation and the maximization of Central Business Districts and industrial areas.</li> <li>• Provided guidelines for informal trade and home undertakings;</li> <li>• Established a framework for investment linked to activity.</li> </ul>
	C) <u>Linkages</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Defined and structured a network of transportation corridors linked to activity.</li> </ul>
	D) <u>Tourism</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identified areas of tourism investment linked to activity.</li> </ul>

	E) <u>Agriculture</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Purpose activities to compliment agricultural output (secondary);</li> <li>• Addressed land reform;</li> <li>• Provided guidelines for Rural Housing;</li> <li>• Identification of high agricultural land;</li> <li>• Indicated proposed commonage areas.</li> </ul>
	F) <u>Land Audit</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Land which vest with National, Provincial and Local Government was indicated to guide future investment on publically owned land.</li> </ul>
	G) <u>Social Development</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicate measures to maximize existing social facilities.</li> </ul>
	H) <u>Mining</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicate mining areas with the intention to maximize job creation.</li> </ul>
	I) <u>Environmental</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide environmental guidelines for the protection of natural assets.</li> </ul>
B) <u>Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Investment</u>	<u>Regional Infrastructure</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The majority of these aspects were dealt with within the 4 Local Municipal Spatial Development Frameworks. The importance of addressing services backlogs, pertaining to roads, water, sanitation and electricity is highlighted in the Spatial Development Framework.</li> </ul>
C) <u>Institutional Development</u>	<u>Cross- Boundary Linkages</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicate the importance of co-operative governance between respective Municipalities and Provinces.</li> </ul>

## **9.2. Projects**

The projects, as identified in the Fezile Dabi District Municipality IDP, with a spatial implication are included in the Spatial Development Framework. The respective projects are structured as follows:

- Projects as identified in Spatial Development Framework;
- Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development (FDMM);
- Local Economic Development (FDDM);
- Projects as identified in Water Services Development Plan;
- Provincial Sector Departments;
  - Agriculture;
  - Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs.

**9.2.1. Projects to be included in IDP as identified in Spatial Development Framework**

Project Name	Budget	Time- Frame		
		2011/12	2012/13	2013/14
1. Revision of the Fezile Dabi District Municipality Spatial Development Framework.	R420 000.00	R140 000.00	R140 000.00	R140 000.00
2. Assist the Ngwathe and Mafube Local Municipality with Spatial Development Framework Reviews (R100, 000) each.	R600 000.00	R200 000.00	R200 000.00	R200 000.00
3. Updating of the Fezile Dabi District Municipality Land Audit.	R250 000.00	R250 000.00	-	-
4. Preparation of guidelines for corridor and nodal development.	R350 000.00	R350 000.00	-	-
5. Updating of the Fezile Dabi District Municipality Housing Sector Plan.	R350 000.00	R350 000.00	-	-
6. Facilitation of the approval of the Land Use Management Schemes of the Local Municipality.	R150 000.00	R150 000.00	-	-
7. Investigate Incentive Schemes.	R450 000.00	R450 000.00	-	-

**9.2.2. Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development**

<b>Key Programme</b>	<b>Project Description</b>	<b>Projects Status/Location</b>	<b>Allocated Funds Per Initiative</b>	<b>Intended Impact</b>	<b>Time Frame</b>	<b>Integration/ Linkages</b>
<b>Township Establishment</b>	Opening of Township Registered	New Township Establishment	R19m (R15m )	Allocation of sites for integrated human settlement	3 years	Mafube LM

<b>Provision of Basic Infrastructure</b>	<b>Construction Fezile Dabi Stadium</b>	Construction Phase: Tumahole	R99m (shortfall of R 36M)	Development of community facilities Sports development in the District	June 2010	Dept. of Sport Arts & Culture Fezile Dabi District Municipalities
		Creation of multipurpose parks	Planning phase	R 0 (shortfall of R14 m)	The project will enhance community participation in the creation of safe living areas through the rehabilitation of degenerated public spaces; create employment as well as enhancement of environmental landscape.	June 2011
<b>Provision of Basic Infrastructure</b>	High Performance Centre (construction)	Non-funded planned project in Metsimaholo	R1m (shortfall, 3m)	Facilitation of professional sports people in FDDM	In progress	FDDM, FFSI; Metsimaholo

9.2.3. Local Economic Development

Key Programme	Project Description	Projects Status/Location	Allocated Funds Per Initiative	Intended Impact	Time Frame	Integration/ Linkages
<b>Job Creation &amp; Poverty Alleviation</b>	Brick Making Factory	Planning Phase	R1.8m (shortfall R1,8m)	Projects seek to develop SMME's within MAFUBE.	Ongoing	Mafube LM
	Roof Tile Manufacturing Factory	Planning Phase	R1m (Shortfall R1m)	Incorporating women in business.	Ongoing	Mafube LM
<b>Tourism Development</b>	Vredefort Dome Centre	Construction of Phase 1 (Building exhibition centre) is completed. Currently busy with Phase 2(craft village; access roads)	R4m (shortfall R6m)	Increase in Tourism activities & potential investments in Vredefort. Job Opportunities for locals in Mokwallo & Tumahole	June 2010	DEAT, DEETA, FDDM
<b>Land Availability</b>	Purchase of 37 plots (portion 1 of 60 Vaaldam Small Holdings)	Planning Phase	R150 000 (External Funding)		End of August 2009	Metsimaholo LM
	Acquisition of adequate land for		R10m (dept. of Land Affairs)		2009-2012	Metsimaholo LM

	agricultural Acquisition of adequate land for agricultural		R20m (dept. of Land Affairs)		2009-11	Metsimaholo LM
	Acquisition of adequate land for Agricultural Acquisition of adequate land for agricultural	Planning Phase	R5m (Own Funds) R5m (Own Funds)		2009-11 2009-11	Metsimaholo LM Metsimaholo LM

DRAFT

#### 9.2.4. Projects as identified in Water Services Development Plan, 2010

Project Name	Area	Water/Sanitation	Amount	Funding Source	Year
Sewer Reticulation & Toilet structure	Namahadi	Sanitation	R2.3m	FDDM/MIG	2009/10
Emergency equipment (Power sharing 4 towns, phase 1-4)	Frankfort, Villiers, Tweeling, Cornelia		R500,000	External loans	
Upgrading existing pump stations	Frankfort			MIG, DWAF, FDDM	
	Villiers				
	Tweeling		R300,000		
	Cornelia		R150,000		
Security fencing at sewer pump stations	Cornelia, Villiers	Sanitation	R900,000	MIG, DWAF, FDDM	
Water borne sewerage networks and toilet structures to address backlogs	Namahadi, Qalabotjha, Cornelia	Sanitation	R11m	MIG, DWAF, FDDM	
	Ntswanatsatsi	Sanitation	R1.1m		
Water reticulation network	Villiers	Water	R2.4m	MLM	
	Frankfort	Water	R2,523 430	MLM	
Water purification plant	Villiers	Water	R6.5m	FDDM	
VIP toilets to	To all households in rural areas based on investigation	Sanitation	R1m	DWAF	
New pipeline between purification plant and pressure tower	Tweeling (approx. 2km)	Water	R1.5m	FDDM/MIG	
Upgrade water pumps for pressure tower	Frankfort	Water		MLM	
Construction of new purification plant		Water	R3.5m	FDDM/MIG DWAF	
Lime dozing machine	Tweeling &	Water		MLM	

	Villiers				
Water network and Water meters to 500 erven	Cornelia and Ntwanatsatsi	Water	R600,000	FDDM/MIG	
Water networks and water meters for new erven	Namahadi, Qalabotjha	Water	R3.5m	FDDM/MIG DWAF	
Upgrading of water networks	Frankfort, Cornelia, Villiers	Water	R4.5m	FDDM/MIG	
Upgrading of water network	Villiers	Water	R3m	FDDM	
Replace existing stand communal taps	Qalabotjha, Namahadi and Mafahlaneng	Water		FDDM	
Phase 1: Replacement of 100 old water meters	Mafube	Water		FDDM, MLM	
Phase 2: Replacement of 300 old water meters	Mafube	Water	R200,000	FDDM, MLM	
Provision of water	To all rural households	Water	R600,000	DWAF	
Replacement of water valves		Water	R100,000	FDDM/MLM	
Provision of fire hydrants and adequate stop valves	Namahadi, Qalabotjha, Ntwanatsatsi and Mafahlaneng	Water	R125,000	FDDM/MLM	

Implementation of measuring/metering system to measure bulk supply and determine water loss areas		Water	R120,000 per annum	FDDM/MLM	
Metering system for administrative usage	Parks, halls etc	Water	R120,000	FDDM	

### 9.2.5. Provincial Sector Departments

#### A) Agriculture

Project Name	Municipality		Cost Estimates	Period / Time Frames
Fezile Dabi Poultry Projects	Whole district		R 2 775 000.00	01/04/2010- 31/03/2011
Provincial Marketing Infrastructure Projects	All Municipalities		R 2 894 000.00	01/04/2010- 31/03/2011
Provincial Female Poultry Project	All Municipalities		R 100 000.00	01/04/2010- 31/03/2011
District Agro-processing Project	Mafube LM		R 600 000.00	01/04/2010- 31/03/2011
District Poultry PR(09-10/462)CAP	Metsimaholo		R 100 000	01/04/2010- 31/03/2011
FATING & FEDLO UNIT (08-09/346)CA	Ngwathe		R 500 000	01/04/2010- 31/03/2011
FDDM Commonage Project	Whole District		R 600 000	01/04/2010- 31/03/2011
FDDM vegetables Project	Whole District	Vegetables	R 800 000	01/04/2010- 31/03/2011
Heilbron Community Piggery Plant	Ngwathe		R 600 000	01/04/2010- 31/03/2011
BOPHELO KE MATLA (06-07/38) CAP	Metsimaholo	Medicinal Plants	R 35.000	
JOELYN TRUST (08-09/266)CAP	Ngwathe	Vegetables	R 200 000	

PARYS HYDROPHONCS (08-09/279) CAP	Ngwathe	Vegetables	R 500 000	
SASOLBURG HYDROP (08-09/405) CAP	Metsimaholo	Vegetables	R 400 000	
MADIHLOFA (08-09/279) CAP	Mafube	Poultry	R 50 000	
Metsimaholo (08-09/433) CAP	Metsimaholo	Vegetables	R 150 000	
OLIFANTS TRUST (08-09/351) CAP	Ngwathe	Piggery	R 180 000	
THEA SETJHABA SCHOOL(08-09/317) CAP	Metsimaholo	Vegetables	R 100 000	
TRAIN & CAPACITY BUILDING (08-09/319) CAP	All Municipalities	Training		
VETERINARY PROJECT	All Municipalities	Veterinary	R3 009 850	
RE YA HOLA RESOURCE MANAGEMENT	Ngwathe	Establishment of pastures	R 554 000	
MOSIA TRUST	Ngwathe	Establishment of pastures	R 86 000	
	Ngwathe	Establishment of pastures		

**B) Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs**

Project Name & Description	Municipality	Cost Estimates / Budget	Time Frames
Sasolburg –Zamdela-1586	Metsimaholo	R 10 153 7464.60	01/04/2010 – 31/03/2011
Orangeville - 200	Metsimaholo	R 12 804. 220.00	
Deneysville - 200	Metsimaholo	R 12 804. 220.00	
Parys -Tumahole	Ngwathe	R 57 618. 990.00	
Vredefort-250	Ngwathe	R 16 005.275	
Heilbron	Ngwathe	R 22 407.385	
Edenville	Ngwathe	R 12 804,220.00	
Kroonstad	Moqhaka	R 16 005,275.00	
Steynsrus	Moqhaka	R 3,201.055	
Viljoenskroon	Moqhaka	R 6,402.110	
Frankfort	Mafube	R 9,603.165	
Villiers	Mafube	R 6,402.110	
Tweeling	Mafube	R 6,402.110	

## CHAPTER 9

# LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT STRATEGY

DRAFT

---